

Primary
4

AL-BAHEE

Connect

Parents'
Guide

Second Term



Contents

Theme (3) My society

Unit (7)	This is where I live	(4)
Unit (8)	We had fun	(39)
Unit (9)	What makes us special?	(73)
	Review (3)	(105)

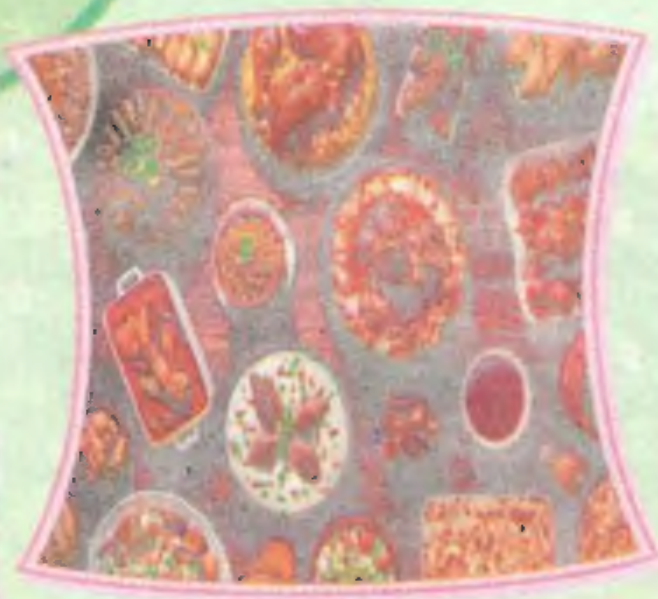
Theme (4) I'm a responsible person

Unit (10)	I enjoy my life	(109)
Unit (11)	What can we do?	(142)
Unit (12)	Fiction reader: Dalia saves the village!	(175)
	Review (4)	(189)
	Listening texts	(191)

Theme (3)

My society

مجتمعي



Unit 7

This is where I live

هذا هو المكان الذي أعيش فيه



In this unit students will ...

- read about the Nile and why it is so important.
- talk about my neighborhood in the past and now.
- use regular and irregular past simple verb forms.
- practice the long vowel sounds.
- practice simplifying fractions.
- write about a memory.

Lesson (1)

The Nile

Listen and repeat.

استمع وردّد.

Different Environments بيئات مختلفة



village

قرية



the Nile

النيل



city

مدينة



river

نهر



building

مبنى



oasis

واحة



mountain

جبل



forest

غابة



desert

صحراء

Extra vocabulary

كلمات إضافية

reptiles

زواحف

crocodile

تمساح

branch

فرع

different

مختلف

quiz

اختبار قصير

human

إنسان - بشر

population

عدد سكان

planet

كوكب

capital

عاصمة

home

موطن / وطن / منزل

Help your child identify these words.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

Al-BAHER - Connect (4) - Second Term

5

Conjugation of verbs

تعريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
love يحب	loved	know يعرف	knew
guess تخمن	guessed	do يفعل	did
live يعيش	lived	have / has يمتلك	had

Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

the longest	الأطول	the shortest	الأقصر
travel to	يسافر إلى	the center of the earth	مركز الأرض
live for	موطن لـ	live in	يعيش في
Which of ...?	أي من ...؟	kinds of	أنواع من

Study the following

1 - The Nile is the longest river in the world.

نهر النيل هو أطول نهر في العالم.

6,670 kilometers long. That's like travelling to the

يبلغ طول نهر النيل ٦,٦٧٠ كيلومترًا. وهذا يعادل السفر إلى مركز الأرض.

3 - The Nile has two branches in Egypt.

نهر النيل له فرعين في مصر.

4 - The Nile is home for different kinds of fish, birds and turtles!

نهر النيل هو موطن لأنواع مختلفة من الأسماك والطيور والسلاحف!

5 - One of the largest reptiles, the Nile crocodile, lives in it.

يعيش فيه أحد أكبر الزواحف وهو تمساح النيل.

Did you know ?

Capital Bucharest in Romania has a cat population that is four times larger than the human population?

هل تعلم أن العاصمة الرومانية للبوتشا في رومانيا لديها عدد سكان أكبر بأربع مرات من عدد سكان البشر؟

Help your child identify these words.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

Lesson (1)

Listen and read.

استمع واقرأ.

A: Let's do this quiz.

لنقم بهذا الاختبار.

B: What's it about?

عن ماذا؟

A: The Nile.

النيل.

B: That sounds very interesting.

هذا يبدو شيئاً جديداً.



A: Of course. The Nile brings life to the whole of Egypt. No River Nile, no Egypt. Come on, let's try.

Question 1, which sentence is true? Is the Nile the shortest, the longest or the widest river in the world?

بالمنطق، يجلب النيل الحياة لمصر كلها. لا مصر بدون نهر النيل. هيا دعنا نجرب السؤال رقم ١، ما هي الجملة الصحيحة؟ هل النيل هو أقصر، أطول أو أعرض نهر في العالم؟

B: Hmm, I don't know. I guess it's the longest, what do you think?

همم، لا أعلم، أظن أنه الأطول، ما رأيك؟

A: Yeah, I know both the Amazon and the Nile are very, very long. Let's choose "b". Next question: "The Nile is 6,670 kilometers long, is it like traveling to the center of the earth, traveling to the moon or traveling to Australia?"

نعم، أعلم أن كلا من نهر الأمازون والنيل طويل جداً. دعنا نختار "ب". السؤال التالي: يبلغ طول النيل ٦,٦٧٠ كيلو متر، هل يشبه السفر إلى مركز الأرض، أم السفر إلى القمر، أم السفر إلى أستراليا؟

B: Maybe traveling to the center of the earth?

A: Hmm, I'm not sure, they are all like good guesses. Number 3, we need to look at the pictures and decide which river is the Nile.

همم، لست متأكدة هذا يبدو وكأنه تخمين جيد. رقم ٣ نحن بحاجة إلى النظر على الصور وتحديد أي نهر هو النيل.

B: I think it's 'c'.

أعتقد أنها «c».

A: Why?

لماذا؟

B: In 'c' you can see the Cairo Tower, so it's clearly in Egypt!

في «c» يمكنك أن ترى برج القاهرة، لذا فمن الواضح إنه في مصر!

A: Ok, last one. How many / كم فرع النيل في مصر؟

حسناً، السؤال الأخير، كم فرع لنهر النيل في مصر؟

B: I'm going to say three.

سأقول ثلاثة.

Erm, check on your phone.

هذا يبدو عدداً جيداً، تحقق من هاتفك.

A: Ok, Aha! There are 2 branches!

حسناً، أها! يوجد فرعين!

General Activities

1 Read and complete the text with words from the box.

اقرأ واكمل النص بكلمات من المربع.

branches - fish - elephant - earth - crocodile

The Nile is the longest river in the world. It is about 6,670 kilometers long. That's like traveling to the center of the 1) The Nile has two 2) in Egypt. It is home for different kinds of 3) , birds and turtles. One of the planet's largest reptiles, the Nile 4) , lives in it.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d. اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

- The Nile is the river in the world.
a) tallest b) shortest c) longest d) widest
- We can't travel to the of the earth.
a) north b) west c) center d) east
- The Nile has two in Egypt.
a) buildings b) canals c) villages d) branches
- The Nile is home different kinds of fish.
a) with b) on c) for d) at
- Camels live in the
a) river b) sea c) desert d) lake
- Crocodiles are the planet's largest
a) insects b) fish c) birds d) reptiles
- Village, city and desert are different
a) villages b) rivers c) oases d) environments

3 Read the text and answer the questions. اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة.

The Nile is the longest river in the world. The Nile has two branches. There are many people living near the Nile. The Nile is 6,670 kilometers long. That's like travelling to the center of the earth. The Nile is home for different kinds of fish, birds and turtles. One of the planet's largest reptiles, The Nile crocodile, lives in it.

A) Choose the correct word.

- 1) The Nile has branches.
 - a) five
 - b) two
 - c) three
 - d) four
- 2) The general idea of the text is about the
 - a) Nile
 - b) school
 - c) tower
 - d) plants

B) Answer the following questions.

- 3) Summarize the text in one sentence.
- 4) What is the longest river in the world?

4 Punctuate the following sentence. ضع علامات الترقيم للجملة الآتية.

the Nile is the longest river

5 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words about:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (18) كلمة عن:

The Nile

Guiding words:

(longest - 6,670 kilometers - two branches)

Lesson (2) A short story about Grandpa

Listen and repeat.

استمع وردد.

Key vocabulary

كلمات أساسية

excited
visitors
wander
memory

متحمس (متحمسون)
زوار
يتجولون / يتجول
ذاكرة / ذكرى

quiet
truck
curious
grandpa

هادئ
شاحنة
محب للاطلاع / فضولي
جد

Extra vocabulary

كلمات إضافية

street
box
metal
Colossal of Memnon

شارع
صندوق
معدن
تمثال مصبور

space
grass
right
left

فضاء / فراغ
عشب
يمين
يسار

Conjugation of verbs

تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Present

Past

pull
bury
walk
study
cross
wonder

سحب
يدفن
يسير
يدرس
يمش
يتساءل

pulled
buried
walked
studied
crossed
wondered

Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present

Past

find
dig
say
grow up
get up
feel

يجد
يجفر
يقول
ينمو / يكبر
يستيقظ
يشعر

found
dug
said
grew up
got up
felt

Important expressions and prepositions

تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

inside the box
cross the road
many years ago
from all around the world

داخل الصندوق
يعبر الطريق
منذ فترة طويلة
من جميع انحاء العالم

sit down
on his face
pull out
look for

يجلس
على وجهه
يسحب الخارج
يتحسس عن

Look and read.

Grandpa and his box of memories

"Look, this was my street." Grandpa was very excited. We were in the village where he grew up. It is near the Colossi of Memnon.

«انظر، كان هذا شاري» كان جدي متحمسا للغاية. كنا في القرية التي نشأ فيها. إنها بالقرب من تمثالي ممفون

"It was very quiet when I lived here," said Grandpa. "Now, there are lots of visitors from all around the world." "That's where my friend lived. We played football on this street. There were no cars then."

قال جدي: «كان المكان هادئا جدًا عندما كنت أعيش هنا. الآن هناك الكثير من الزوار من جميع أنحاء العالم.» «هذا هو المكان الذي عاش فيه صديقي. لعبنا كرة القدم في هذا الشارع. لم تكن هناك سيارات حينها»

Grandpa looked right and left, and he looked at the road. The road had lots of trucks and cars. "And this," he said "is where I lived." We looked at the space. There was no house. There was only grass and one big tree. "Hmm, I wonder. It was so many years ago...." Grandpa looked at the tree. Grandpa walked to the tree. He looked at the ground. Then he stopped. He pulled out an old, metal box. He had a big smile on his face. "Look!" he said. He was very excited. "We were eight years old when we found this. Let's sit down and look inside the box." "Yes, please," I said. "I'm very curious!"

نحن نبحث عن المكان الفارغ. لم يكن هناك من. كان هناك فقط عشب وشجرة واحدة كبيرة. نظر الجد إلى الشجرة وقال: «همم. أتعجب. كان ذلك منذ سنوات عديدة...». نظر الجد إلى الشجرة. مشى جدي إلى الشجرة.

Language

The Past Simple Tense

زمن الماضي البسيط

Usage الاستخدام

يستخدم الماضي البسيط للتعبير عن فعل حدث وانتهى في الماضي.

- We **played** football on this street. - He **pulled out** an old, metal box.

Form التكوين

يكون زمن الماضي البسيط من التصريف الثاني للفعل.

Regular verbs الأفعال المنتظمة

يضاف { **d, ed, led** } الى الفعل المنتظم.like → **liked** pull → **pulled** carry → **carried**

Spelling Notes:

١- إذا كان الفعل ينتهي بـ (e) يضاف (d) فقط.

lik **e** → **liked** live → **lived**

٢- إذا كان الفعل ينتهي بحرف ي (y) يتم تصف (ied).

bu → **buried** study → **studied**

٣- إذا كان الفعل ينتهي بحرف متحرك يتم إضافة (ed) للفعل.

play → **played** stay → **stayed**

٤- إذا كان الفعل ينتهي بحرف متحرك، يضاعف الحرف الساكن الأخير.

stop → **stopped** travel → **travelled**

Irregular verbs الأفعال غير المنتظمة تحفظ كما هي.

swim → **swam** see → **saw** go → **went**

Negative النفي

Subject (الفاعل) + **didn't** + Inf. (مصدر الفعل)We **didn't play** football on this street.

→ Use the past simple tense

ساعد طلال أن يستخدم زمن الماضي البسيط

Lesson (2)

Questions

(Yes / No) question السؤال (هل) ...?

Did + subject (فعل) + **inf.** (مصدر الفعل) ...?

Did you do your homework? - Yes, I did. - No, I didn't.

Wh- question السؤال بكلمة استفهام

Q.W + did + subject (فعل) + **inf.** (مصدر الفعل) ...?

When did you get up? - I got up at seven o'clock.

Keywords الكلمات الدالة

yesterday

أمس ago

منذ

last (week / ...)

في الماضي (الأسبوع = last week)

I studied English yesterday.

Verb to (be) in the past

was

were

(I / He / She / It / A singular noun) + **was** ...

It was very quiet when I lived here.

(We / You / They / A plural noun) + **were** ...

They were at the museum yesterday.

Negative النفي

He / She / It / A singular noun + was not (wasn't)

Grandpa's village wasn't very noisy.

We / You / They / A plural noun + were not (weren't)

There weren't any cars on the street.

Question

(Yes / No) question سؤال (نعم / لا)(Was / Were) + subject (كان / كانت) + الفاعل?

Was Grandpa very excited? Yes he was. / No, he wasn't.

Wh- question بكلمة استفهامQ.W + (was / were) + subject (كان / كانت) + الفاعل?

Where were they yesterday? They were in the village.

1

Write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets

اكتب الشكل الصحيح للكلمة (الكلمات) بين القوسين

My uncle us last Friday.

Aya to school yesterday.

(Do) you water the plants two days ago?

How did you when you found the box?

Many years ago, my grandpa a metal box in the garden.

2

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

اختر

Grandpa very excited yesterday.

a) is b) were c) was d) be

Last Friday, we in the village.

a) is b) were c) was d) are

I here two years ago.

a) lives b) was lived c) live d) lived

There no cars in the past.

a) was b) were c) is d) are

We football on this street.

a) playing b) plays c) played d) were played

When did he up?

a) got b) getting c) gets d) get

Do you do your homework yesterday?

a) Do b) Did c) Were d) Does

Lesson (2) –

Ask and answer.

اسأل واجيب

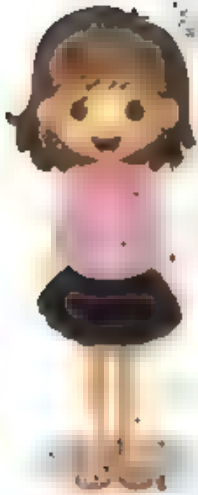


When **you** **wake up** today?

متى استيقظت اليوم؟



I **wake up** at six o'clock.



What **you** **do** on your way home?

ماذا فعلت وأنت في طريقك للمنزل؟



I **play** football.



What subjects **did you** **study** today?

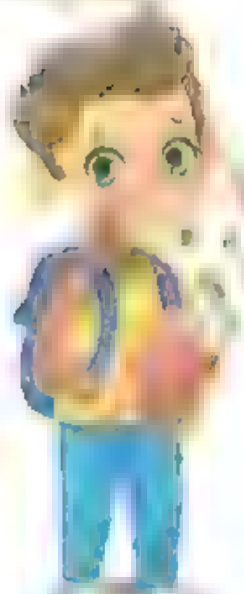


I **study** English and Math.



Help your child ask and answer.

ساعد طفلك أن يسأل ويجيب



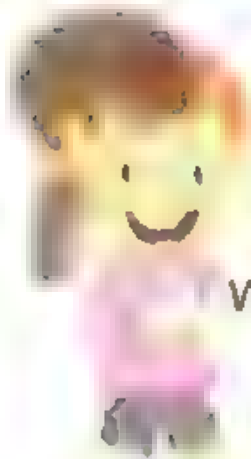
you **do** your homework?
it easy?

هل تفعل

واجبك



Yes, I **did** my homework.
It **was** very easy.

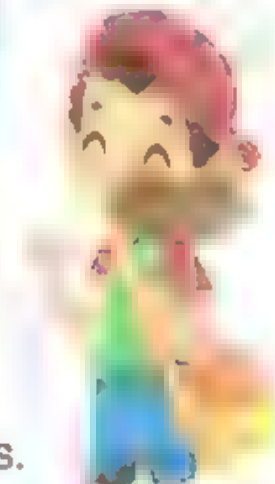


What games **do** you play today?

ما الألعاب التي

لعبتها اليوم؟

I **played** video games.



لعبت ألعاب الفيديو.



Read and complete this paragraph.

Yesterday, I _____ up at seven o'clock. I studied English and
Math. I _____ football on my way home. I _____ my homework.
It _____ very easy. I _____ video games.

General Activities

1 Read and complete the text with words from the box.

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من المربع

was - buried - were played - quiet

Grandpa's village was very 1 . Now, there are a lot of people. There 2) no cars in the past. Now, there are a lot of trucks and cars. Grandpa 3) eight years old when he 4) the box of memories. Now, Grandpa is very old.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة

- Grandpa's village very quiet in the past.
a) is b) was c) were d) be
- He the box of memories.
a) are burying b) bury c) buried d) burying
- What did you on your way home?
a) does b) done c) doing d) do
- In the past, I long hair.
a) has b) have c) having d) had
- Grandpa to the tree yesterday.
a) walk b) walking c) walked d) walks
- I'm very to know everything about the story.
a) slow b) sad c) curious d) quiet
- I why he came late.
a) make b) redo c) do d) wonder
- He looked at the ground and started .
a) cooking b) digging c) writing d) reading
- Grandpa out an old, metal box.
a) made b) pulled c) called d) wrote
- He had a lot of at home yesterday.
a) bikes b) visitors c) trucks d) cars

3 Read and write the correct form of the word/s between brackets.

امرأ واكتب الشكل الصحيح للكلمات التي بين الأقواس

- 1 Ali young when he buried the box.
- 2 When you get up yesterday?
- 3 The village was very quiet in the .
- 4 We football on the street in the past.
- 5 There no cars in the past.
- 6 you do your homework yesterday?
- 7 What did you on your way home?
- 8 I in Cairo ten years ago.
- 9 How Grandpa feel when he saw his old street?
- 10 I English yesterday.
- 11 My grandma a cake last Friday.
- 12 Did you pictures yesterday?

4 Punctuate the following sentence

what games did you play today

5 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words about

اكتب فقرة اثنا عشرة من (18) كلمة عن

Your day

Guiding words:

(got up - did homework played

Lesson (3)

A short story

Vocabulary المفردات

mouse / mice	loud	excited
city	pretty	scared
the country	hole	smoke
pleased = delighted	voice	noise
exciting	smells	sounds

Conjugation of verbs

Present	Past	Present	Past
wait	waited	give	gave
prepare	prepared	know	knew
rain	رَمَطَ rained	come	بَاقَى came
cover	بَعَصَى covered	run	يَجْرِي ran

Important expressions and prepositions

in the ground	أَنتَ the corner
bright lights	It's time to ...
Why don't you ?	better than
catch the train	go back
good for	مِلْنَه full of
There's no reason to wait.	

Listen and read.

استمع واقرأ.

City Mouse and Country Mouse

فأر المدينة وفأر الريف

Beginning:

The city mouse visited the country mouse in his hole in the ground.

The country mouse was pleased. He gave his friend grass and seeds.

The city mouse said, "Thank you. You know, the city is pretty and full of bright lights, why don't you come and see?"

The country mouse was delighted and very excited.

The city mouse stopped eating and said, "There's no reason to wait. We can catch a train at eight."

The two friends ran to the train, just as it started to rain.



الثامنة. ركض الصديقان إلى العطار عندما بدأت تمطر.

Middle:

In the city, the smoke from the cars covered the stars and the noise was incredibly loud. The country mouse was scared.

He wasn't prepared for so many new sounds and smells.

Suddenly, a cat's voice said, "Hmm, two mice and some bread."

"Run, run, run" said the city mouse. They ran around the corner.

قال فأر المدينة: "اركض، اركض، اركض". ركضا حول الزاوية.

End:

The country mouse said, "Thank you my friend, the city is exciting, but it's time for me to go back to the country and back to where life is good for me."

الحياة جيّدة بالنسبة لي".

There are three stages of the story

يوجد ثلاث مراحل للقصة

Beginning بداية

The city mouse visited the country mouse.

Middle منتصف

The two mice caught the train.

End نهاية

The country mouse went back to where life is good for him.

The moral of the story: Different people like different things.

معنى القصة: الأشخاص مختلفين وبالتالي يفصلون أشياء مختلفة.

Language

Irregular Plural Nouns

صيغ جمع غير منتظمة

- There are many irregular plural nouns that are learnt as they are.

هناك بعض الأسماء الجمع الغير منتظمة والتي تُحفظ كما هي



a mouse



mice



a foot



feet



a child



children



a tooth



teeth



Part 2: Pronunciation

Long Vowel Sounds

/ei/	/i:/	/ai/	/ou/
gave	see	my	no
wait	seed	mice	go
train	tree	bright	smoke
rain	pleased	light	hole
eight	eat	defied	toe
plate	he	excited	grow
late	she	life	low

Practice the long vowel sounds with the sentences below.

1. Wait, there's a train at eight!
2. I see two mice eating some seeds.
3. Why don't you visit my hole?
4. We can see three trees.
5. My kite is high in the sky.
6. Oh no, I hurt my toe.



Part 3: CLIL: Math

Fraction (الكسر الاعشار)

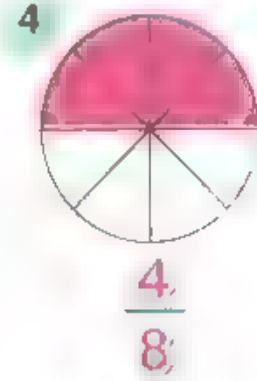
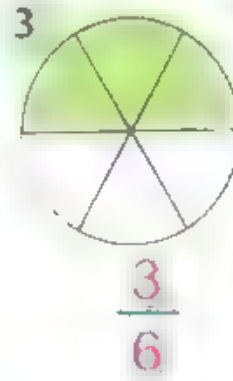
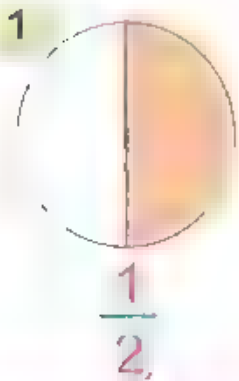
A fraction is a part of a whole.

It has a numerator and denominator.

$$\frac{1}{2}$$

numerator
denominator

< smaller than (اصغر من)
> bigger than (اكبر من)
= the same as (ساوي)



Equal Fractions:

لاحظ :

$$\frac{1}{2} = \frac{2}{4} = \frac{3}{6} = \frac{4}{8}$$

$$\frac{1}{2} \text{ is bigger than } \frac{2}{6} \quad \frac{1}{2} \text{ is smaller than } \frac{3}{4} \quad \frac{1}{2} \text{ is the same as } \frac{4}{8}$$

> < =

Simplifying Fractions:

We can make a fraction simpler by dividing a numerator and denominator by the same number.

يمكننا تبسيط كسر بقسمة البسط والمقام على نفس الرقم

$$\frac{10}{40} = \frac{10 \div 10}{40 \div 10} = \frac{1}{4} \quad \text{So} \quad \frac{10}{40} = \frac{1}{4}$$

General Activities

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

اسمعه وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة

- In the _____, the smoke from the cars covered the stars.
a) town b) city c) cave d) lake
- The noise was incredibly _____.
a) low b) slow c) loud d) light
- The city is exciting but it's too _____.
a) happy b) sad c) good d) scary
- The country life is _____.
a) quieter b) longer c) shorter d) faster

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة

- Mice live in _____.
a) houses b) apartments c) trees d) holes
- The city is full of _____ lights.
a) bright b) dark c) blue d) pale
- We can _____ a train.
a) sleep b) pass c) catch d) go
- The _____ from cars covered the stars.
a) smoke b) fog c) water d) light
- I can see two _____.
a) a rat b) mice c) a mouse d) mouse
- Life in the country is _____ than life in the city.
a) taller b) longer c) better d) bigger
- Life in the city is _____.
a) exciting b) excited c) delighted d) pleased

3 Read and complete the text with words from the box.

اقرأ واكمل النص بكلمات من المربع

happy voice train corner mice

There were two mice. The two ¹ _____ went to the city.
They went by ² _____. They heard a cat's ³ _____. They
ran around the ⁴ _____. They were very scared.

Lesson (3)

4 Read the text and answer the questions. اقرأ النص و اجب عن الاسئلة

The city mouse visited the country mouse in his hole in the ground. The country mouse was pleased. He gave his friend grass and seeds. The city mouse said, "Thank you. You know, the city is pretty and full of bright lights, why don't you come and see?" The country mouse was delighted and very excited. The city mouse stopped eating and said, "There's no reason to wait. We can catch a train at eight."

A) Choose the correct word.

- The country mouse gave his friend grass and
a) beans b) seeds c) potatoes d) rice
- The underlined word "pretty" means
a) sad b) bad c) busy d) beautiful

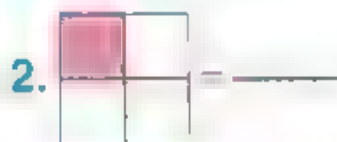
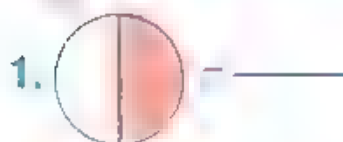
B) Answer the following questions.

- How can they go to the city?
- How was the country mouse?

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets. اقرأ النص و اكتب الشكل الصحيح للكلمات بين القوس

- The donkey has four (foot).
- The lion has sharp (tooth).
- I saw three (mouse).
- The (child) are playing in the park.

6 Look and write the fraction. انظر و اكتب الكسور



7 Read and tick (✓) or (✗).

1. $\frac{1}{2} < \frac{3}{6}$ ()

2. $\frac{1}{8} > \frac{5}{10}$ ()

3. $\frac{1}{4} > \frac{2}{8}$ ()

4. $\frac{2}{3} = \frac{3}{8}$ ()

8 Read and match.

امراً وصل

hole

/ei/

smoke

light

/i:/

my

stop

/ai/

train

/ou/

9 Color the shape according to the fraction

لون الشكل حسب الكسر.

1. $\frac{1}{2}$

2. $\frac{2}{4}$

3. $\frac{1}{3}$

4. $\frac{3}{6}$

10 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEN (18) words about

Guiding words:

City life

(pretty - exciting - smoke)

Writing & Project

Vocabulary المفردات

first day	اليوم الاول	town	مدينة
neighbor	جار	nervous	مضطرب ، عصبى
neighborhood	حي سكنى	electricity	كهرباء
backpack	حقيبة مدرسية	shoe store	محل أحذية
pants	بنطال	gate	بوابة
gas cars	سيارات تعمل بالغاز	kind	محبوب
shopping mall	مركز تسوق	modern	حديث

Common verbs

Regular verbs افعال منتظمة

Present

Past

cry	cry
remember	remember
stay	stay
carry	carry

Irregular verbs افعال غير منتظمة

Present

Past

put on	put on
go	went
speak	spoke
drive	drove

Important words and prepositions كلمات هامة

It was fun!	كان ممتعاً	do a project	فعل مشروع
start school	بدء المدرسة	as much as possible	بأكبر قدر ممكن
stay at home	بقي في البيت	find out	اكتشف
play with	يلعب بـ	much cleaner	أكثر نظافة
Saturdays	في يوم السبت	shopping area	منطقة التسوق
put on = wear	ارتدى	then and now	آنذاك و الآن
like this	مثل ذلك	(be) called	يسمى



How to plan your writing

- 1- Write notes about the topic.
- 2- Write the topic sentence.
- 3- Write the details in the form of paragraph.
- 4- Write the conclusion.
- 5- Review the spelling and punctuation marks.

Note

When we write notes, we use key words. We do not write sentences.
We can use our notes to plan writing.

عندما ندون الملاحظات، فإننا نستخدم الكلمات الأساسية ولا نكتب جملاً كاملاً. يمكننا استخدام
الملاحظات للتخطيط للكتابة.

Example Write about your first day of school.

Notes:

- ☐ First day
- ☐ six years
- ☐ T-shirt - pants
- ☐ nervous
- ☐ teacher - kind

I remember my first day of school. I was six years old. I put on a green T-shirt and black pants. I was very nervous. The teacher was very kind. I liked my school.
It was fun!

Project

Look and read.

انظر واقرأ.

What is different now in Salama's town?

My town then and now

We are doing a history project in school about our town. We looked at old photos. We spoke to our older to find out as much as possible.

نحن نعمل بحث تاريخي في المدرسة عن مدينتنا. نظرنا إلى الصور القديمة. تحدثنا مع جدينا. عرفنا كثير من المعلومات.



Grandma says that her mom and dad drove cars like this. All the cars were gas cars. They were very noisy.

قالت جدتي أن أمي وأبي ساروا في سيارات مثل هذه. كانت جميع السيارات سيارات بنزين. كانت صاخبة جداً.



Now we have a car that uses electricity and gas; it's much cleaner and quieter.

الآن لدينا سيارة تستخدم الكهرباء والبنزين؛ إنها نظيفة جداً وهادئة.



Our town had a shopping area, but it was very old. Dad worked in a shoe store on Saturdays.

كان أبي يعمل في متجر أحذية أيام السبت.



Today we have a big modern shopping mall, but I don't like shopping! I want to play football.

الآن لدينا مركز تسوق كبير حديث، لكنني لا أحب التسوق! أريد أن ألعب كرة القدم.

General Activities

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

اسمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة

1. _____ says that his mom and dad drove gas cars.
a) Father b) Mother c) Grandpa d) Grandma
2. Gas cars were very
a) noisy b) quiet c) clean d) good
3. Our town had a cleaner area but it was very
a) new b) modern c) old d) far
4. My dad worked in a store on Saturdays.
a) clothes b) shoe c) book d) plastic

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. I my first day of school.
a) remember b) play c) watch d) can
2. I like staying home.
a) at b) for c) on d) to
3. I put a blue T-shirt.
a) in b) to c) at d) on
4. cars use electricity and gas.
a) Old b) Modern c) Big d) Bad
5. The school is very big.
a) pen b) art c) river d) gate
6. I carried my to school.
a) car b) backpack c) door d) desk

3 Read and complete the text with words from the box.

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من المربع

put - nervous first see staying

My name is Hend. I remember my 1) day of school. I was seven years old. I lived in Alexandria. I was very and I didn't want to go to school. I like 3) at home with my family. I 4) on a red T-shirt and gray pants. I met my new friend who is called Aya. The next day, I wasn't nervous, and I wanted to see my new friend.

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

Al-BAHER - Connect (4) - Second Term 31



4 Read the text and answer the questions. اقرأ النص و اجب على الاسئلة

I remember my first day of school. I was six years old, and I lived in Aswan. I was very nervous. I liked staying at home with my family. I wanted to play with my toys. I didn't want to go to school. I put on a blue T-shirt, gray pants, and black shoes. I carried my backpack. Mom and I walked to school. The teacher was very kind. We studied math and played games; it was fun!

A) Choose the correct answer

- 1) The writer was very _____ at the first day of school.
 a) happy b) excited c) nervous d) sad
- 2) The underlined word "kind" means
 a) bad b) nice c) strong d) ugly

B) Answer the following questions.

- 3) How did the writer go to school?
- 4) What did the writer study?

5 Punctuate the following sentence. ضع علامات الترقيم في الجملة الآتية

how did you feel at school

6 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words about:

اكتب فقرة إثناثنية من (18) كلمة عن

Your first day of school

Guiding questions:

- How old were you? - How did you feel? - What did you wear?

Review on Unit (7)

Vocabulary

the Nile	river	delighted	متشوق
building	village	excited	متحمس
city	curious	mouse/mice	فأر
desert	visitors	moral	أخلاق
forest	quiet	catch a train	تدرك قطار
mountain	metal box	the country	بلد
oasis	pleased	fraction	كسرة

Language

The Past Simple Tense

Usage

يستخدم للتعبير عن فعل حدث و انتهى في الماضي

e.g - We played football on this street.

Form The second form of the verb.

Negative Subject + didn't + inf.

e.g - We didn't play football on this street.

(Yes / No) question Did + subject + inf. ?

e.g - Did you go to the market? - Yes, I did. - No, I didn't.

Wh- question Q.W + did + subject + inf. ?

e.g - When did you get up? - I got up at seven o'clock.

Keywords

yesterday أمس ago منذ

last (week / ...) في الماضي in the past

e.g. I studied English yesterday.

Writing Corner

UNIT 7

اكتب فقرة (نص) عن

"The Nile"

The River Nile is the longest river in the world. It is about 6,670 kilometers long. It has two branches in Egypt. It is home for different kinds of fish, birds and turtles.

"My memories"

I used to live in a small village. There were many green trees and grass. The streets were very quiet. I played with my friends on these streets.

"My first day of school"

My name is Sara. I remember my first day of school. I put on my pink T-shirt and black pants. My dad drove me to school. I was nervous. The teacher was kind and I liked her.

"My neighborhood then and now"

I live in a small town. I live with my grandpa and grandma. My neighborhood is different now. The buildings were small and old. Now they are tall and modern. Grandpa drove an old car. Now we have a car that uses electricity.

Dictation on Unit (7)

Lesson (1)

Word	Meaning	Word	Meaning
	مدينة		مبنى
	غابة		صحراء
	واحة		جبل
	قرية		نهر

Lesson (2)

Word	Meaning	Word	Meaning
	شارع		شاحنة
	يسحب		يحفر
	فصولي		يدفن
	روار		متحمس
	ينساءل		هاديء

Lesson (3)

Word	Meaning	Word	Meaning
	مسرور		حفرة - جحر
	مدينة		أصواء
	فأر		فزان
	عالي الصوت		جميلة
	دخان		ضوضاء
	صوت (الإنسان)		خائف

Lessons (4 & 5)

Word	Meaning	Word	Meaning
	متوتر		منطقة تسوق
	بوابة		حقبة ظهر
	سيارات تعمل بالغاز		الحي السكاني
	حار		محل احذية

Activities on Unit (7)

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة

- The Nile brings life to the whole of
 a) France b) Egypt c) China d) England
- The Nile is about _____ kilometers long.
 a) 6 670 b) 6 550 c) 6 500 d) 6 400
- It's like travelling to the center of the
 a) Mars b) Earth c) Venus d) Mercury
- The Nile has two _____ in Egypt.
 a) floors b) canals c) lakes d) branches

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة

- The Nile has two _____ in Egypt.
 a) animals b) visitors c) birds d) branches
- The _____ is very high. I can't climb it.
 a) lake b) mountain c) river d) city

3 Read and complete the text with words from the box.

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من المربع

crops weather balls trees neighbors

I'm Ali and I live with my family. We live near the river and there are lots of 1) _____ all around us. The 2) _____ is nice and our 3) _____ are very friendly. We grow a lot of 4) _____.

Activities

4 Read the text and answer the questions. اقر النص واذبح على الاسئلة.

Last week, I visited my friend in Cairo. I traveled by train. The weather was very hot. There were many cars and the noise was loud. I stayed in his house for two days. Cairo is exciting and pretty. I thanked my friend. I went back to my village in the evening.

A) Choose the correct answer.

- 1) Last week, I visited my friend in
 a) Cairo b) Luxor c) Aswan d) Tanta
- 2) The underlined word "pretty" means
 a) ugly b) beautiful c) bad d) dirty

B) Answer the following questions.

- 3) Do you think the writer loved Cairo?
- 4) When did you go back to your village?

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

اقرأ واكتب الشكل السليم لكلمات التي بين القوس

1. Yesterday, we (play) football in the park.
2. Grandpa's village (is) quiet in the past.
3. We (find) a metal box in the ground last year.
4. Last Friday, I (visit) my grandparents.

6 Punctuate the following sentence. ادرج علامات الترقيم في الجملة الآتية.

how long is the Nile

7 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words about:

اكتب فقرة إنتشائية من (18) كلمة عن:

Grandpa's village

Guiding words

(lived - quiet - no cars)

Al- Azhar Corner

خاص بطلاب الأزهر الشريف

1 Listen and choose the correct answer.

- 1 The Nile is the
 a) shortest b) widest c) tallest d) longest
 river in the world.
- 2 The Nile has
 a) ninety b) two c) four d) ten
 branches in Egypt.
- 3 The Nile
 a) chameleon b) lizard c) crocodile d) rats
 lives in the Nile.

2) Read and complete the dialogue with:

long - branches - about - two

- Sara : Let's do this quiz.
 Mariam : What's it 1) ?
 Sara : The Nile. It's very interesting.
 Mariam : How long is it?
 Sara : It's about 6,670 kilometers 2)
 Mariam : How many 3)
 Sara : It has 4) does it have in Egypt?
 branches in Egypt.

3. Choose the correct answer from a , b, c or d.

- 1 The Nile is for different kinds of fish.
 a) flat b) block c) apartment d) home
- 2 My little brother asks my mom a lot of questions. He is
 a) curious b) happy c) hungry d) sad
 I was when I saw the lion.
 a) happy b) scared c) kind d) thirsty
 Heba the kitchen yesterday.
 a) clean b) cleaning c) cleans d) cleaned
 What you do last weekend?
 a) did b) do c) does d) were

4) Reorder the words to make correct sentences.

- 1 crops grow - Farmers - the - near - river - .
- 2 his Al painted - room - Friday - last - .
- 3 have in - three - room - We - lights - this - .
- 4 They a big have - shopping - modern - mall - .
- 5 did - feel - How you - school - at - ?

Unit

8

We had fun

سعدنا وقتنا ممتعاً

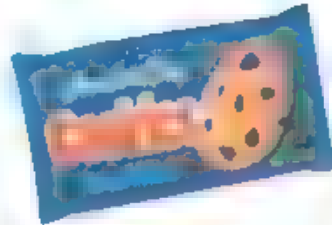


- find out how to use quantifiers.
- practice using past simple irregular verbs
- discuss and write about festivals
- read about Egyptian festivals and celebrations.
- talk about special family days
- write about a special day

Lesson (1) Food and drinks

Listen and repeat.

استمع وردّد



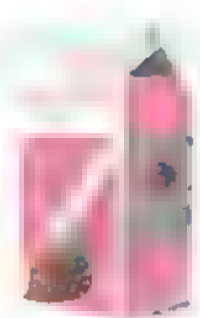
a packet of cookies

موز سكرات الكوكيز



a bottle of water

زجاجة مياه



a carton of juice

علبة عصير

Quantifiers

محددات الكمية



a slice of cake

شريحة كيك



a bar of chocolate

قالب شوكولاته



a piece of cheese

قطعة جبن

Lesson (1)

Extra vocabulary كلمات اضافيه

banana	موزة favorite	محبب - معصل
lemon	ليمونة pizza	بيزا
meat	لحم semolina	سميد / ليااب الخبز
carrot	جزر dessert	حلوى / عجة

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الافعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present

Past

Present

Past

happen	happened	drink	ate
listen	listened	think	thought
work	worked	eat	ate
name	named	find	found

Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

You look a bit green.	That's horrible!
What's the matter?	a kilo of
a bottle of cola	a bar of soap

Did you know ?

In Morocco, Algeria and Tunisia, there is a famous dish called Couscous. It is semolina with meat and / or vegetables. It can also be eaten with sugar or as a dessert. Do you want to try Couscous?

في المغرب والجزائر وتونس يوجد طبق مشهور يسمى الكسكسي مع اللحم أو الخضراوات. يمكن أيضا تناوله مع السكر كحلوى. هل ترغب في تجربة الكسكسي؟



Listen and read.

استمع واقرأ.

- Mom : Did you have fun at the party, Reem?
هل استمتعتي في الحفلة يا ريم؟
- Reem : Yes, thank you.
نعم، أشكرك.
- Mom : What's the matter? You look a bit green.
ماذا؟ أنت تبدو خضراء.
- Reem : Hmm, I don't feel well.
أنا لا أشعر جيداً.
- Mom : Oh, dear. Did you eat too much?
أه، يا رب. هل أكلت كثيراً؟
- Reem : I only had a slice of cake.
أنا فقط أكلت قطعة من الكعكة.
- Mom : Anything else?
شيء آخر؟
- Reem : No... I drank some juice.
لا... أنا شربت بعض العصير.
- Mom : Some juice?
بعض العصير؟
- Reem : Well, a carton of juice.
حسناً، علبة عصير.
- Mom : Is that all?
هل هذا كل شيء؟
- Reem : Maybe a bar of chocolate, only a small one ... and a piece of cheese.
ربما قالب شيكولاتة، قطعة صغيرة فقط ... وقطعة جبنة.
- Mom : Cheese and chocolate? That's horrible!
جبنة و شيكولاتة، هذا فظيع!
- Reem : That's why I ate some cookies.
لهذا أكلت بعض البسكويت.
- Mom : How many cookies did you eat?
كم عدد البسكويت الذي أكلته؟
- Reem : A ... packet ... of cookies.
أنا ... كيس ... من البسكويت.
- Mom : Oh, no!
أوه، لا!
- Reem : I was thirsty after all that food, so I had a bottle of water.
كنت عطشانة بعد كل هذا الطعام، لذلك شربت (حاجة ماء).

Language

Quantifiers

We use the "quantifiers" to indicate the quantity of something.

نستخدم « محددات الكمية » للإشارة إلى كمية شيء ما.



General Activities

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة

Nada and her mum went to the

- a) zoo b) library c) supermarket d) park

2 Nada bought two _____ of milk.

- a) bottles b) slices c) pieces d) bars

Nada's mom bought two bars of

- a) milk b) bread c) water d) soap

Nada's mom bought a _____ of cookies.

- a) bar b) packet c) piece d) carton

2 Complete the sentences with words from the box.

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من المربع.

bar - green - slice - juice - packet

Reem went to the party yesterday. She looks a bit 1) _____.

She had a 2) _____ of cake. She drank a carton of

3) _____. She had a 4) _____ of chocolate

and a piece of cheese.

3 Write a, b, c or d in the box.

اكتب a, b, c أو d في المربع

1. He wants a _____ of soap.

- a) bar b) packet c) carton d) bottle

2. She wants a slice of

- a) juice b) water c) cake d) milk

3. She drank a _____ of water.

- a) packet b) carton c) slice d) bottle

4. I ate a _____ of cheese.

- a) bottle b) packet c) carton d) piece

5. I need a bar of

- a) chocolate b) cookies c) water d) juice

Lesson (1)

6. Mazen ate a _____ of cookies.
a) slice b) bottle c) carton d) packet
7. Mona ate a slice of _____.
a) cookies b) juice c) meat d) water
8. I want a bottle of _____.
a) meat b) pizza c) chocolate d) cola
9. I drank a carton of _____.
a) juice b) chocolate c) meat d) cake
10. I bought a carton _____ milk.
a) in b) of c) at d) off



4 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) اقرأ واكتب الشكل الصحيح للكلمات التي على الأقواس

أفرد : درنا : يمكن : الضم : للكلمات التي على الأقواس

1. I ate a _____ (slice) of cookies.
2. Mona drinks a _____ bar of water.
3. My mother bought a _____ bottle of soap.
4. Reem drank a _____ piece of juice.
5. My sister ate a _____ packet of chocolate.
6. Ali drank a _____ carton of cola.



5 Punctuate the following sentence. ضع علامات الترقيم في الجملة الآتية

reem feels sick. She looks a bit green



6 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (18) كلمة عن:

الطعام والشراب في الحفلة

Food and drinks in the party

Guiding words:

(party - a carton of - a slice of

Lesson (2) A poem

Vocabulary المفردات

poem	قصيدة	deep	عميق	the day	اليوم
weekend	عطلة	movie	فيلم	dessert	حلوى
beach	شاطئ	trip	رحلة قصيرة	candy	حلوى
jellyfish	جellyfish	Damietta	محافظه دمياط	frozen	مجمد
meal	وجبة	lovely	جميلة / رائعة	octopus	حظيوة

Conjugation of verbs صرف الافعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
enjoy	enjoyed	taste	tasted
check	checked	rain	rained
use	used	remember	remembered

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
see	saw	feel	felt
make	made	catch	caught
swim	swam	freeze	froze
sing	sang	go	went

Lesson (2)

Important expressions and prepositions عبارات وحروف جر هامة

live by	عاش بجانب	feel happy	شعر بالسعادة
lovely dish	طبق رائع	instead of	بدلاً من
sing a song	غنى أغنية	taste horrible	ذوق رديء
feel sick	شعر بالغثاس	frozen yogurt	زبادي مجمد

Listen and read.

استمع واقرا.

Our trip to the Sea

Last weekend we went to Damietta to see
Grandma and Grandpa, who live by the sea.

We swam in the water, which was deep and blue.

We saw lots of fish, and an octopus, too!

Grandpa caught a fish,

Which Grandma made into a lovely dish!

We ate the meal and had a healthy dessert,

Bananas, apples and frozen yogurt.

We saw some old photos and sang a song

But time was short. The day wasn't long

We felt happy. It was a day to remember.

We will go again soon, early September!

Language

The Past Simple Tense with Irregular verbs

من الماضي البسيط مع الأفعال غير المنتظمة

أفعال غير المنتظمة تحفظ كما هي لأنه لا يوجد قاعدة توضح كيفية تحويلها إلى الماضي

Present	Past	Present	Past
throw	ألقى threw	buy	اشتريت bought
write	كتب wrote	hear	سمع heard
forget	نسى forgot	fly	طير flew
say	بقول said	come	بأني came
run	يجري ran	cut	بمضع cut
give	يعطي gave	feel	يشعر felt

e.g. - I felt happy yesterday.

Negative

Subject (الماعل) + didn't + inf. (المصدر)

e.g. - I didn't feel happy yesterday.

Question

Yes / No question

Did + subject (الماعل) + inf. (المصدر) ...?

e.g. - Did you sing a song? - Yes, I did. - No, I didn't.

Wh- question

Q.W + did + subject (الماعل) + inf. (المصدر) ...?

e.g. - How can you feel? - I felt happy.

Lesson (2)

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Last weekend we _____ to Damietta.
a) go b) goes c) went d) going
2. The boys _____ in the sea yesterday.
a) swim b) swam c) swims d) swum
3. We _____ lots of fish in the sea last weekend.
a) see b) has seen c) sees d) saw
4. Grandpa _____ a fish yesterday.
a) catch b) catches c) caught d) catching
5. We ate a meal and _____ a healthy dessert.
a) having b) has c) have d) had
6. Last weekend we _____ happy.
a) feeling b) feel c) feels d) felt
7. They _____ pizza last week.
a) eat b) eats c) ate d) eating
8. The day _____ too long.
a) were b) was c) are d) being
9. I _____ my swimming test yesterday.
a) have b) has c) having d) had
10. I _____ to the beach last year.
a) go b) goes c) went d) going

2 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

1. What _____ (do) you do yesterday?
2. He _____ (fly) his kite yesterday.
3. My aunt _____ (come) to visit us yesterday.
4. What did they _____ (talk) at the party yesterday?
5. We _____ (watch) an interesting movie last night.
6. I _____ (forget) my book last Monday.
7. My father _____ (catch) a big fish three days ago.
8. I didn't _____ (had) meat yesterday.
9. Did your mom _____ (make) a delicious cake yesterday?
10. Where _____ (were) you go yesterday?

General Activities

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة

1. Last weekend we went to

- a) Aswan b) Luxor c) Damietta d) Cairo

Grandpa and grandma live by the

- a) sea b) river c) mountain d) lake

3. We _____ in water.

- a) played b) swim c) ran d) sang

4. _____ caught a fish.

- a) Dad b) Mom c) Grandma d) Grandpa

2 Circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. The water was _____ and blue.

- a) delicious b) warm c) cold d) hot

Grandpa

a fish yesterday.

- a) drank b) used c) caught d) saw

We saw some old photos and

a song.

- a) gave b) sang c) made d) drew

Last weekend we

to Damietta.

- a) go b) goes c) visit d) visited

5. We had ice-cream for

- a) desert b) dessert c) meat d) drink

I _____ too much candy yesterday.

- a) eat b) eating c) ate d) eats

What did you

last weekend?

- a) doing b) does c) did d) do

I _____ a cake, but I used salt instead of sugar. It tasted horrible.

- a) eat b) eats c) ate d) eating

9. Last night I

very tired.

- a) is b) was c) are d) were

Where did you

yesterday?

- a) go b) goes c) went d) going

Lesson (2)

3 Read and complete the text with words from the box.

اقرأ واكمل النص بالكلمات من الصندوق

fish - swam - deep - blue -

We went to Damietta to see Grandma and Grandpa, who live by the 1) . We 2) in the water, which was 3) and blue. We saw lots of 4) .

4 Read the text and answer the questions.

اقرأ النص وابدع عن الاسئلة

Last weekend we went to Damietta to see Grandma and Grandpa, who live by the sea. We swam in the water, which was deep and blue. We saw lots of fish, and an octopus, too! Grandpa caught a fish, which Grandma made into a lovely dish! We ate the meal and had a healthy dessert, bananas, apples and frozen yogurt. We saw some old photos and sang a song. But time was short. The day wasn't long. We felt happy. It was a day to remember. We will go again soon, early September!

A) Choose the correct word.

- 1) Last weekend we went to
a) Alexandria b) Damietta c) Luxor d) Cairo
- 2) The underlined word "healthy" is the opposite of
a) unhealthy b) nice c) good d) kind

B) Answer the following questions.

- 3 When did you go to Damietta?
- 4 What did you see?

5

Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

اقرأ واكتب الشكل الصحيح للكلمات التي بين القوسين

- 1 We (swim) in the sea yesterday.
- 2 Grandpa (catch) a fish last Friday.
- 3 They (have) ice-cream for dessert last night.
- 4 We (see) lots of fish last holiday.
- 5 (next) weekend, we went to Aswan.
- 6 What did you (eat)?
- 7 Where (do) you go last Monday?
- 8 I (watch) a great movie last night.
- 9 We (eat) too much candy. We felt sick.
- 10 I was happy when I (hear) the good news.

6

Punctuate the following sentence.

ضع علامات ترقيم للجملة الآتية

omar and mazen swam in the sea.

7

Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words about:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (18) كلمة عن

A trip to the sea

Guiding words

(weekend - Damietta - sea)

Lesson (3) CLIL: Social Studies

Vocabulary المفردات

Ramadan	celebrate (d)	
Shawwal	celebration	
Eid Al-Fitr	festival	
Eid Mubarak	sunset	
kahk	region	منطقة
fast (v)	nuts	مكسرات
mosque	bakery	مخبز
honey	delicious	لذيذ

Extra vocabulary كلمات إضافية

Coptic Easter	information	photos	
also	month	until	حتى / نوبة
Islamic	special	during	
moon	park	people	

Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

want to	do better	يؤدي بشكل أفضل
is called	eat delicious food	تأكل طعام لذيذ
during the day	make kahk	تصنع كحك
think about	buy from	يشترى من
spend time with	teach about	

Look and read.

Eid Al-Fitr

Eid Al-Fitr is a Muslim festival. The month before Eid is called Ramadan. In Ramadan, many Muslims fast during the day. This means they don't eat or drink until sunset.



In the month of Ramadan, people think about the past year. They think about the things they did well and the things they want to do better. It is also a time to help other people.

عيد الفطر هو عيد إسلامي. الشهر الذي يسبق العيد يسمى رمضان. في رمضان، يفصم المسلمون خلال النهار. هذا يعني أنهم لا يأكلون أو يشربون حتى غروب الشمس. في شهر رمضان، يفكر الناس في الأشياء التي فعلوها جيدًا والأشياء التي يريدون فعلها بشكل أفضل. إنه أيضًا وقت لمساعدة الآخرين.

What is "Eid Al-Fitr"?

That's a very good question! It's different every year. Eid happens in the first day of the 10th Islamic month, called *Shawwal*. The month starts when people see the new moon.

Lots of Kahk! لكثير من الكحك

Kahk are delicious cakes. People eat kahk to celebrate. They have flour, sugar, and honey in them. Many families make kahk but you can buy them from a bakery, too.

الكحك هو كعك لذيذ. يأكل الناس الكحك للاحتفال. الكحك يحتوي على دقيق، سكر، وعسل.



الكحك هو كعك لذيذ. يأكل الناس الكحك للاحتفال. الكحك يحتوي على دقيق، سكر، وعسل. يمكن صنع الكحك في المنزل، ولكن يمكنك أيضًا شرائه من خبز.

"Eid Mubarak" « عيد مبارك »

Eid is a time of celebration and for being happy. People say 'Eid Mubarak' to their friends. People go to the mosque and spend time with their families. They eat delicious food and celebrate!

عيد هو وقت للاحتفال وللمسرة.



عيد هو وقت للاحتفال وللمسرة. يقول الناس 'عيد مبارك' لأصدقائهم. يذهب الناس إلى المسجد ويمضي وقتًا مع عائلاتهم. يأكلون طعامًا لذيذًا ويحتفلون.

Lesson (3)

Look and read.

انظر واقرأ.

Sham El Nessim

Sham El-Nessim is Egypt's oldest festival. Sham El-Nessim is celebrated every year on Easter Monday, which is the day after Easter. All Egyptians celebrate Sham El-Nessim. During the festival, people eat fesikh (dried fish), lettuce, green onions, termes (beans), and boiled eggs. People like to paint boiled eggs, have picnics and spend time outside.



١. هور) واشيفيس المسلوق. يحب الناس تناول بعض المسلوق و نعشات وقضاء الوقت في الخارج



Think about another festival in your region or country. Complete the table, then write.

Name of the festival
When is it?
What do people do?
What do people eat?
What do people wear?
Why do you like it?

General Activities

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

اسمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة

- Eid Al-Fitr is a Muslim
a) festival b) school day c) holiday d) sports day
- The _____ before Eid is called Ramadan.
a) day b) year c) week d) month
- Many Muslims _____ during the day of Ramadan.
a) play b) fast c) eat d) drink
- In Ramadan, people think about the _____ year.
a) next b) present c) second d) past

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة

- Eid Al-Fitr is a _____ festival.
a) Muslim b) Coptic c) Christian d) Jewish
- In Ramadan, Muslims _____ during the day.
a) eat b) drink c) sleep d) fast
- Muslims don't eat or drink until _____ in Ramadan.
a) sunrise b) midnight c) sunset d) sunlight
- Eid happens in the _____ day of the 10th Islamic month.
a) first b) second c) third d) fourth
- Kahk are delicious
a) toasts b) cakes c) bread d) cake
- Shawwal starts when people see the new
a) moon b) sun c) earth d) sky
- We can buy kahk from a
a) grocers b) farmers c) bakery d) butcher's
- Eid is a time of _____ and for being happy.
a) participation b) celebration c) evaporation d) information

Lesson (3)

- 9 In Eid Al-Fitr, we eat delicious food and
a) study b) watch c) celebrate d) work
10. Sham El-Nessim is Egypt's oldest
a) food b) club c) festival d) playground

3 Read and complete the text with words from the box.

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من المربع.

bakery - celebrate - eat - nuts - families

Kahk are delicious cookies. People eat kahk to ¹⁾
They have ²⁾ , sugar, and honey in them. Many ³⁾
make kahk but you can buy them from a ⁴⁾ , too.

4 Read the text and answer the questions. اقرأ النص وابدأ عن الأسئلة.

Eid Al-Fitr is a Muslim festival. The month before Eid is called Ramadan. In Ramadan, many Muslims fast during the day. This means they don't eat or drink until sunset. Eid happens in the first day of the 10th Islamic month, Shawwal. People eat kahk to celebrate. They spend time with their families.

A) Choose the correct word(s).

- 1) The text is about
a) Eid Al-Fitr b) Mother's Day c) Sham El-Nessim d) Coptic Easter
- 2) The underlined word "before" is opposite to
a) next b) after c) on d) in

B) Answer the following questions.

- 3) What is the month before Eid?
- 4) When do Muslims fast in Ramadan?

5

أعد تربية الكلمات لتكون جملة صحيحة.

أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكون جملة صحيحة

are delicious kahk cookies .

from buy kahk a bakery .

Egyptians Sham celebrate El-Nessim .

6

أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكون جملة صحيحة.

1, we celebrate Eid Al-Fitr after Ramadan

2) when is Eid Al-Fitr

7

أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكون جملة صحيحة.

EIGHTEEN 18

أكتب فقرة (نشاط) من (10) كلمة عن

Eid Al-Fitr

Guiding words:

festival - Ramadan - kahk)

Lessons (4 & 5)

Writing & Project

Vocabulary المقدرات

great-grandma	جددة جدي	special	مميز
picnic	رحلة بيكنيك	together	معاً
birthday	يوم ميلاد	fun	متعة / مرح

Extra vocabulary كلمات إضافية

huge	صخم	stars	نجوم
garden	حديقة	Christmas tree	شجرة عيد الميلاد
countries	دول	colored balls	كرات ملونة
aunt	عمة / خاله	games	عاب
uncle	عم / خال	lights	ضوء

Conjugation of verbs

Present	Past	Present	Past
decorate	decorated	represent	represented
play	played	throw	threw

Important expressions and prepositions

come together	تجتمع	chocolate cake	كعكة شوكولاتة
play with	يلعب مع	Happy Birthday!	عيد ميلاد سعيد!
have fun	يضحك	the whole family	الكل
had a party	احتفل	special day	يوم خاص

Help your child identify these words.

ساعد طفلك أن يعرف على هذه الكلمات

Listen and read.

استمع واقرأ

Great-grandma's birthday

Two years ago, we had a very special party. My great grandma was 90 years old! All my family came together to celebrate. All my cousins, aunts, and uncles came.

سنتين مضى، قمنا بعمل حفلة خاصة جداً. جئنا جميعاً أبناء عمي وعمامي وأعمامي.

We had a huge picnic in my aunt's garden. There was lots of food: salad, meat, fish, bread, cakes, cookies, and fruit. I ate a big slice of chocolate cake and I drank a bottle of orange juice. I also ate some salad and fruit.

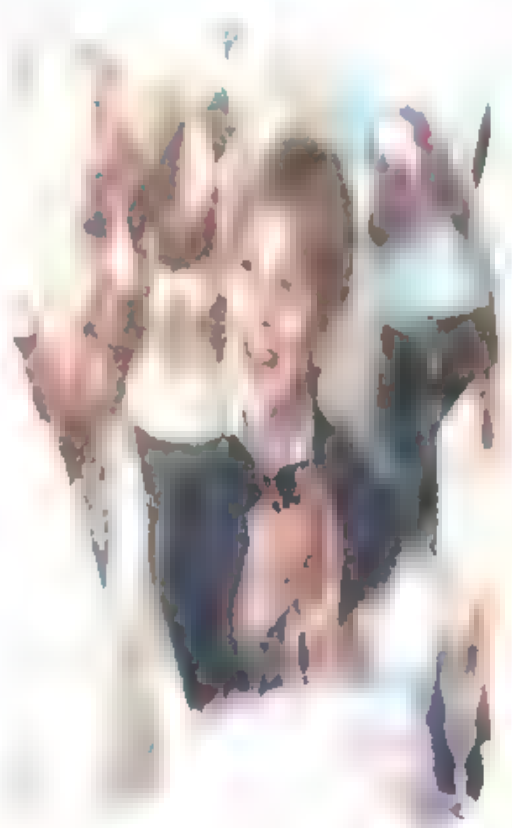
قمنا بعمل وجبة ضخمة في حديقة عمتي. كان هناك الكثير من الطعام: سلطة ولحم وسمك وخبز وكعك وبسكويت وفواكه. أكلت شريحة كبيرة من تورتة الشوكولاتة وشربت زجاجة عصير برتقال. وأكلت أيضاً بعض السلطة والفاكهة.

I played games with my cousins all afternoon. We ran. We threw a ball. We sang "Happy Birthday" to our great-grandma.

لعبنا ألعاباً مع أعمامي وأعمامي وأعمامي طوال فترة الظهر.

It was a very special day because our great-grandma was very happy. She liked seeing the whole family. We all had fun.

كانت يوماً خاصاً جداً لأن أجدتي كانت سعيدة جداً ورأيت كل العائلة. جميعاً قمنا بمرحاً.



Lessons (4 & 5)



Read again and answer the questions.

1) What was the special day?

2) Who was at the party?

3) What did the writer eat?

4) What did the writer do?

5) Why was it a special day?

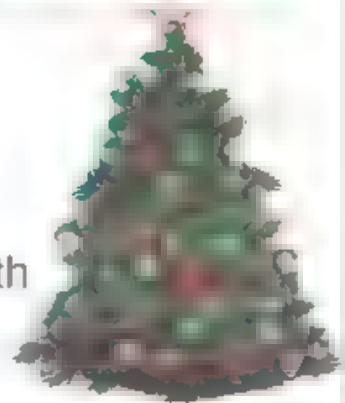
Look and read.

ص ر و ف

What do people put on Christmas trees?

In many countries, people decorate Christmas trees at Christmas.

These trees are always green. The trees represent new life. People decorate the trees with lights, colored balls, and stars.



في كثير من البلدان، يزين الناس أشجار عيد الميلاد (الكريسماس) هذه الأشجار بأضواء وألعاب.

أشجار عيد الميلاد هي دائما خضراء. الأشجار تمثل حياة جديدة. يزين الناس الأشجار بالاصواء والكروان الملونة والمجهر.

General Activities

1 Circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة

- 1 We had a huge picnic in my aunt's
a) house b) park c) school d) garden
- 2 There was lots of
a) toys b) food c) books d) cars
- 3 I ate a big slice of
a) cheese b) meat c) chocolate cake d) bread
- 4 I drank a of orange juice.
a) bottle b) slice c) bar d) piece

2 Circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة

- 1 Yesterday we a special party.
a) has b) had c) having d) have
- 2 My-grandma was 90 years old.
a) great b) young c) thin d) small
- 3 We had a picnic in my aunt's garden.
a) little b) sad c) huge d) tiny
- 4 We "Happy Birthday" to our great-grandma.
a) sang b) ate c) drank d) threw
- 5 She liked seeing the family.
a) wall b) call c) whole d) hole
- 6 We all fun.
a) did b) had c) made d) played
- 7 I drank a of orange juice.
a) bottle b) slice c) pocket d) piece
- 8 I ate a big of chocolate cake.
a) bottle b) slice c) carton d) pocket
- 9 People Christmas trees at Christmas.
a) sleep b) eat c) drink d) decorate
- 10 The trees new life.
a) represent b) want c) read d) sell

Lessons (4 & 5)

3 Read and complete the text with words from the box.

celebrate birthday family picnic food sing

My grandpa's birthday was yesterday. We had a nice

- 1) _____ at my grandparents' house. All the family came to
2) _____ his birthday. The food was 3) _____. We sang
"4) _____" to him. My grandpa was very happy.

4 Read the text and answer the questions.

Two days ago, we had a very special party. My great-grandma was 90 years old! All my family came together to celebrate. All my cousins, aunts, and uncles came. We had a huge picnic in my aunt's garden. There was lots of food: salad, meat, fish, bread, cakes, cookies, and fruit. My great-grandma was very happy to see the whole family. We sang "Happy Birthday" to her. We had fun.

A) Choose the correct word.

- 1) My great-grandma was _____ years old.
a) 70 b) 80 c) 90 d) 100
- 2) All my _____ came to the party.
a) teachers b) friends c) doctors d) aunts

B) Answer the following questions.

- 3) What did you do in your aunt's garden?
- 4) Summarize the text in one sentence.

5

Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

اقرأ وكتب الكلمة الصحيحة بين الأقواس

- 1 Two years ago we (have) a special party.
- 2 I (eat) a big slice of chocolate cake yesterday.
- 3 I (play) games with my cousins last week.
- 4 It (is) a nice party because my great-grandma was happy.
- 5 My great-grandma (like) seeing the whole family last year.

6

Punctuate the following sentences.

ضع علامات الترقيم ملائم في هذه

- 1 great-grandma's birthday was special

2. i ate some fruit

7

Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words about:

اكتب فقرة (الثمانية من 18) كلمة عن:

A special day

Guiding elements:

- What was the special day?
- Who was there?
- What did you eat?
- What did you drink?

Review on Unit (8)

Quantifiers محددات الكمية

a carton of juice

a packet of cookies

a slice of meat

a piece of cheese

a bar of chocolate

a bar of soap

a bottle of water

a slice of cake

a carton of milk

a piece of bread

Others

Shawwal

fast

poem

kahk

grandma

Eid Al-Fitr

mosque

friendly

surprised

celebration

picnic

decorate

Social Studies



Eid Al-Fitr is a Muslim festival.



Kahk are delicious cookies.



All Egyptians celebrate Sham El-Nessim.



During Sham El-Nessim, people eat fesikh and colored eggs.

Writing Corner

Write a paragraph about something you did last week.

اكتب فقرة انشطة من (١٨) كلمة عن

"A day when you had fun"

I went to Damietta to visit my Grandma and Grandpa.
I went there with my family. I played and swam in the sea.
I ate delicious fish. I played games with my cousins. We had fun.

"Eid Al-Fitr"

Eid Al-Fitr is a Muslim festival. The month before Eid is called Ramadan. We celebrate Eid Al-Fitr. We have kahk and play. We are very happy.

"Sham El-Nessim"

Sham El-Nessim is a national holiday in Egypt. It's celebrated in spring. We go to the parks with our families and spend the day outside. We usually have fesikh, salted fish, and colored eggs.

"Grandma's birthday"

Last week, we had a very special party. My grandma was 60 years old. All my family came together to celebrate. We had a huge picnic in my aunt's garden. There was lots of food.

Dictation on Unit (8)

Exercise 1

Word	Meaning	Word	Meaning
	قالب شوكولاتة		عبوة كوكيز
	زجاجة ماء		علبة عصير
	قطعة جبن		شريحة كيك

Exercise 2

Word	Meaning	Word	Meaning
	يسبح		سيح
	يرى		رأى
	يأكل		أكل
	يفني		عنى
	يصطاد		اصطاد
	يشعر		شعر

Exercise 3

Word	Meaning	Word	Meaning
	رمضان		عيد الفطر
	يحتفل		يصوم
	احتفال		كحك
	مخبز		مسجد

Exercise 4

Word	Meaning	Word	Meaning
	برهة		الجدة الكبرى
	خاص / مميز		مرح
	يزين		شجرة الكريسماس

Help your child dictate the words.

ساعد طفلك على إملاء الكلمات.

Activities on Unit (8)

1

Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة

- Eid is a time of _____ and for being happy.
a) celebration b) watering c) studying d) planting
- People say "Eid Mubarak" to their _____.
a) killers b) enemies c) fans d) friends
- People go to the _____ and spend time with their families.
a) temple b) mosque c) church d) cave
- They eat _____ food and celebrate.
a) bad b) hard c) delicious d) unhealthy

2

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة

- Eid is a time of _____ and for being happy.
a) celebration b) fast c) work d) irrigation
- I drank a _____ of water.
a) slice b) bottle c) bar d) piece

3

Read and complete the text with words from the box.

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من المربع

recent - lights dark - green - decorate

People like to celebrate around the world. In many countries, people ¹⁾ _____ Christmas trees at Christmas. These trees are always ²⁾ _____. The trees ³⁾ _____ new life. People decorate the trees with ⁴⁾ _____, colored balls, and stars.

Activities

4

Read the text and answer the questions.

Sham El-Nessim is a national holiday in Egypt. It is Egypt's oldest festival. Sham El-Nessim is celebrated every year on Easter Monday, which is the day after Easter. All Egyptians celebrate Sham El-Nessim people go to the parks with their families and spend the day outside. People usually have fesikh, salted fish, and colored eggs. They all have fun.

A) Choose the correct word.

- 1) Sham El-Nessim is a national holiday in
a) London b) America c) Egypt d) France
- 2) In Sham El-Nessim, people spend the day
a) inside b) outside c) home d) school

B) Answer the following questions.

- 3) Who celebrates Sham El-Nessim?
- 4) Summarize the text in one sentence.

5

Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

1. I (buy) a packet of cookies yesterday.
2. Last Monday, Ali (go) to the park.
3. Heba (read) a comic book last night.
4. My brother (wake) up late yesterday.

6

Punctuate the following sentence.

Amr and mona were at the party

7

Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words about.

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (18) كلمة عن

Sham El-Nessim

Guiding words:

(celebrate - spring fesikh)

1. Last week we went to

- a) Giza b) Cairo c) Damietta d) Alexandria

Grandparents live by the

- a) sea b) club c) school d) river

3. We saw lots of

- a) dishes b) fish c) ships d) chicks

Swam Damietta - Where - sea

Reem: Where did you go last weekend?

Tara: I went to 1) to see my grandparents.

Reem: 2) did they live?

Tara: They lived by the 3)

Reem: What did you do there?

Tara: We 4) in the water which was deep and blue.

a . b c . d .

"You look a bit green" means you are

- a) sick b) happy c) strong d) healthy

We Sham El-Nessim in spring

- a) play b) celebrate c) run d) sleep

Christmas trees new life.

- a) decorate b) throw c) catch d) represent

I noise last night.

- a) hear b) hears c) heard d) hearing

My mom very tired yesterday.

- a) is b) was c) has d) does

went beach to with the my family .

three drank We of water bottles .

did look W1, Omar a bit green ?

color eggs we boiled in Sham El-Nessim .

decorated the Mom herself cake birthday .

February Test

اختبار شهر فبراير

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.
اسمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة

- 1 We went to _____ to see my grandparents.
a) Cairo b) Alexandria c) Ianta d) Aswan
- 2 We _____ in the water.
a) played b) swam c) ran d) watched
- 3 My _____ caught a big fish.
a) dad b) mom c) grandpa d) aunt
- 4 Grandma made the _____ into a lovely dish.
a) meat b) rice c) fish d) spaghetti

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- 1 Mice live in _____ in the ground.
a) walls b) bars c) holes d) doors
- 2 Muslims _____ during the days of Ramadan.
a) rest b) play c) fast d) eat

3 Read and complete the text with words from the box.
اقرأ واكمل النص بكلمات من المربع

fast, quiet, big, small, old, new

We are doing a project at school about the history of cars. In the past, cars were ¹ _____ cars. They were very ² _____. Now, we have a car that uses ³ _____ and gas. It's much ⁴ _____ and quieter.

4 Read the text and answer the questions.

Hi! My name's Sama. I'm in grade four. Last Friday, it was my birthday. I became ten years old. All my family came to celebrate. My father gave me a good present. It was a pet cat. I like cats very much. My cat is white. It has a long tail. It has blue eyes. It likes milk. It likes to run and jump. I love playing with my cat. It makes me happy.

A) Choose the correct word.

1) This text is about "

a) Sama's school b) Sama's house c) Sama's birthday d) cat

2) Sama's father gave her a pet

a) dog b) cat c) horse d) parrot

B) Answer the following questions.

3) Summarize the text in one sentence.

4) When was Sama's birthday?

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

1. I a research about plants last week.

2. I have a (bottles) of water.

3. In the past, my grandpa a gas car.

4. What did he () for dessert?

6 Punctuate the following sentence.

i want a bar of chocolate

7 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words about:

اكتب فقرة الثمانية من (18) كلمة عن

The Nile

Guiding words:

(longest - river - branches)

Unit 9

What makes us special

ما يجعلنا مميزين



- read about party games.
- listen about some unusual festivals around the world.
- practice more irregular past simple verb forms.
- explore how to present information.
- write an invitation
- work in groups to organize a class celebration.

Lesson (1) Games around the world

Key vocabulary كلمات رئيسية

Party Games	ألعاب الحفلة	pass the parcel
hide and seek	البحث عن الخبئ	wrap
musical chairs	المقاعد الموسيقية	unwrap
rope pulling (tug-of-war)	سحب الحبل	

Extra vocabulary كلمات إضافية

ready	مستعد	birthday	present
traditional	تقليدي	popular	exciting
wide	واسع	winner	seeker

Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs فعل منظم

Present	Past
celebrate	celebrate
wrap	wrap
cover in	cover in
join	joined
close	closed
count	count

Irregular verbs فعل غير منظم

Present	Past
give	gave
hold	held
take off	took off
keep	kept
sit	sat
hide	hid

Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات مهمة

get together	اجتمعوا	without	بدون
open presents	افتح الهدايا	put out	أطفئ
sit in a circle	يجلسون في دائرة	the last	الآخر
play music	لعبوا الموسيقى	respect rules	احترم القواعد
a piece of paper	قطعة من الورق	help others	ساعد الآخرين
listen to others	استمعوا للآخرين	take	أخذ

Lesson (1)

Look and read.

انظر واقرأ.

Party Games

When we get together with our family and friends to celebrate something like a birthday or a wedding, the children often play games. Here are some traditional games people play around the world.

استعددة التي يلعبها الناس حول العالم

Pass the parcel لعبة تمرير الطرد

We all love to give presents. It's even more fun to open presents

How to play:

Wrap a small present and cover it in lots and lots... and lots of paper. The players sit in a circle.

Play some music.

Players give the present to the next person as the music plays. When the music stops, the player holding the present takes off one piece of paper. The player who unwraps the present keeps it.

كل شخص من يقدم هدياً ويفتح هدياً أكثر منه



Musical chairs لعبة الكرسي الموسيقية

Run but be ready to sit!

How to play:

Put out some chairs. If you have 6 players, you only need 5 chairs.

Play some music.

Players run around the chairs. When the music stops, everyone sits down. The player without the chair is "out". Take away one chair and play again.

كل من لم يجلس يجلس



Hide and seek لعبة الاستغماية / الخفية

This is a very old and popular game. Many players can join in this exciting game. All you need is a wide place to play it.

Unit (9)

How to play

One player, called the **seeker**, closes his or her eyes and counts to ten. The other players hide. The seeker tries to find them. The first player the seeker finds becomes the next seeker. The last one left is the winner.



هذه لعبة قديمة جداً ومحبوبة. يمكن للعدد من اللاعبين لعبها في مكان مفتوح.
تلعبها بطريقة اللعب (اللعبة) واحد يسمى (المتبع) يحاول إيجاد اللاعبين الآخرين.
الأخير المتبقى هو الفائز.

Tug-of-war (rope pulling) لعبة شد الحبل

It's a sport with two teams against each other in a test of strength. Children always play it in the park. Each team is trying to pull the rope towards them. The team who pulls strongly is the winner.



هي رياضة ذات هدفين ضد بعضهما البعض. كل فريق يحاول سحب الحبل بقوة أكبر.
الفريق الذي يسحب بقوة أكبر هو الفائز.

What do you learn when you play together?

We learn to:

نتعلم أن:

have fun

respect rules

help others

listen to others

Pass the parcel

You need people.

You need presents.

You need music.

Musical chairs

You need people. You need music.

You need The player without
to run. a chair is out.

Hide and seek

You need
people.

You need to cover
your eyes and play it.

It's better to play it
outside.

You need
to run.

General Activities

1 Listen and circle the correct answer. **استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة.**

- Musical _____ is a game in which you run but be ready to sit!
a) tables b) chairs c) desks d) sofas
- Players run _____ the chairs.
a) under b) behind c) next d) around
- When the _____ stops, everyone sits down.
a) music b) movie c) play d) water
- The player without the chair is _____.
a) inside b) on c) out d) by

2 Choose the correct answer. **اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.**

- We get _____ with our friends to play.
a) in b) on c) together d) off
- Children often _____ games.
a) play b) take c) eat d) sleep
- We all love to _____ presents.
a) drink b) go c) lose d) give
- Players run _____ the chairs.
a) on b) around c) under d) in
- Hide and _____ is a popular game.
a) sick b) sack c) seek d) sock
- We must respect _____ when we play.
a) roles b) ropes c) rides d) rules

3 Read and complete the text with words from the box. **اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من المربع.**

music - chairs - sits - run - but

Musical chairs is an interesting game. To play it, you can
1) _____ but be ready to sit! Put some 2) _____. If you
have 6 players, you only need 5 chairs. After that, play some
3) _____. Players run around the chairs. When the music
stops, everyone 4) _____ down. The player without a chair is
out. Take away one chair and play again.

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

4

Read the text and answer the questions.

أقرأ النص و اجب عن الاسئلة

Hide and seek: This is a very old and popular game. Many players can join in this exciting game. All you need is a wide place to play it.

How to play:

One player, called the seeker, closes his or her eyes and counts to ten. The other players hide. The seeker tries to find them. The first player the seeker finds becomes the next seeker. The last one left is the winner.

A) Choose the correct answer.

- 1) Hide and seek is a very _____ game.
 a) bad b) strong c) popular d) high
- 2) The last one left is the _____.
 a) singer b) winner c) loser d) player

B) Answer the following questions.

- 1) What do you need to play hide and seek?
- 2) Summarize the text in one sentence.

5

Rewrite the following sentence.

صنع عمار واناس اللعبة الدخلة

omar and Anas like to play hide and seek

6

Write a paragraph of **EIGHTEEN (18)** words about:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (18) كلمة عن

Guiding words

Party games

games - children - presents)

Lesson (2) Festivals around the world

Festivals مهرجانات

Cheese rolling	La Tomatina
Kite festival	Chinese New Year

Extra vocabulary كلمات إضافية

string	dragon	messy
old clothes	monster	hill
mud	alive	strange
envelope	weird	traditions
race	shape	inside

Conjugation of verbs صرف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present	Past
laugh	laughed
wish	wished

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present	Past
wear	wore
fall	fell

Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

look	good luck
Happy New Year!	covered
take a shower	rhyme with
feel alive	take part in
UK = the United Kingdom	for fun
During my travels	smiling faces
all over the world	The rest of

Help your child identify these words.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

Look and read.

انظر واقرأ.

My name is Dina and it's my job to tell you about my travels and to bring the rest of the world into your home. The world is a big, beautiful place. The more we learn about other countries the better we can understand each other and live together.

This week I'm looking back at some of the weird and wonderful traditions I saw during my travels.

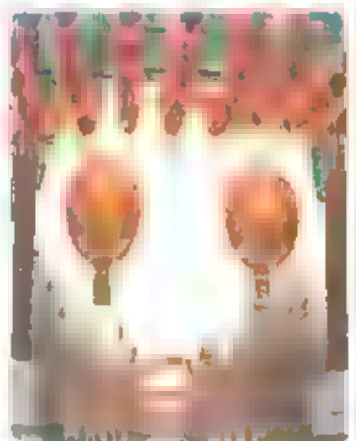
سأستعرض هذه الأسبوع بعض العادات الغريبة والرائعة التي رأيتها خلال رحلاتي.

Let's start with this one in the UK, it was one of the strangest things I ever saw. Look, they pushed the round cheese down the hill and hundreds of people ran after it. Why did they do it? The person who won the race, won the cheese. It was funny (and very strange), but it looked a bit dangerous. Lots of people fell but no body was hurt.



The next one was in China and many parts of Asia. People at weddings and celebrations gave the children and young people red envelopes

I asked my friend about this and she told me that there was money inside the envelope and it was their way of saying good luck. The amount of money usually had an even number at the end (like 2,4,6,8 etc.) because they said this was good luck.



Lesson (2)

I had lots of fun here, it was called La Tomatina and it was in Spain. It was very messy! Every body threw old tomatoes at each other. I couldn't see anything. After of a few minutes everyone was covered in red tomatoes! Why do they throw old tomatoes? For fun!



الحمراء! لماذا يرمون الطماطم القديمة؟ للمتعة!

This is the fourth one. It was a beautiful kite festival. These happen all over the world, but this one was in India. Hundreds of people, young and old, flew their kites. The sky was full of animals, fish, monsters... I tried to fly one of the kites, it was very difficult!



Well, that's just a few examples of the festivals I saw during my travels. I saw people who wore colorful clothes, who ate delicious food, who did some silly things. Most importantly in all these festivals I saw lots of happy smiling faces.

طعامًا لذيذًا، ويفعلون بعض الأشياء السخيفة

Language

Past Simple Tense

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

	d	celebrate	celebrated
Verb	ed	push	pushed
	ied	try	tried

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
see يرى	saw	run يركض	ran
tell يخبر	told	fall يسقط	fell
have / has عنملك	had	win يفوز	won
wear يرتدي	wore	fly يطير	flew
give يعطي	gave	say يقول	said
throw يلقي	threw	eat يأكل	ate
read يقرأ	read	hit يضرب	hit
run يركض	ran	go يذهب	went
make يصنع	made	be يكون	was / were
take يأخذ	took	do يفعل	did

1. We **visited** Luxor last year. She **met** her friends yesterday.

2. **Heba** **visited** **her** **friends** **yesterday**.

اقرأ واكتب الشكل الصحيح للكلمات التي بين الأقواس

- I **visited** Heba a few days ago.
- Ali **played** football at the club last weekend.
- We **ate** (eats) meat yesterday.
- Mai **wore** a new dress in the party yesterday.
- Ahmed **ran** fast and won the race last Friday.

Rhyme

A rhyme:

means one or two words that sound alike, but the meaning is different.

القافية هي كلمة أو كلمتين لهما نفس النطق الصوتي ولكن يختلفون في المعنى

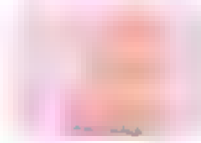
Some verbs in the past rhyme with other words.

بعض الأفعال في الماضي تتشابه في الصوت مع كلمات أخرى

"went" rhymes with tent



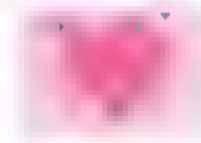
"put" rhymes with foot



"ate" rhymes with cat



"tread" rhymes with bed



"was" rhymes with grass



"hit" rhymes with it



General Activities

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d. اذكر الإجابة الصحيحة

- 1 The cheese rolling festival is celebrated every year.
a) rolling b) putting c) reading d) calling
- 2 He gave me a red envelope to wish me good luck.
a) playing b) wishing c) wearing d) reading
3. At the La Tomatina festival, everything is red.
a) La Tomatina b) Kite festival c) Cheese rolling d) Eid Al-Fitr
- 4 I fell and I was covered in mud.
a) at b) of c) with d) in
- 5 We must wear old clothes at La Tomatina.
a) play b) go c) wear d) take
6. Is it easy to fly a kite?
a) ride b) drive c) fly d) run
- 7 People throw tomatoes at La Tomatina festival.
a) drink b) eat c) throw d) run
- 8 Grandma gave me some money yesterday.
a) give b) giving c) gave d) gives
- 9 Paint fell on the floor and mum was angry.
a) fall b) falling c) fell d) fallen
- 10 Mom told me to take a shower yesterday.
a) tells b) told c) tell d) telling

2 Read and complete the text with words from the box.

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من المربع

race - fish - kite - cheese

There're many festivals around the world. One of the festivals is the ¹ race festival. Hundreds of people fly different shapes of kites, ² fish, and monsters. In ³ the cheese rolling festival, they push the round cheese down the hill and hundreds of people ran after it. The person who wins the ⁴ race, wins the cheese. In La Tomatina festival, people throw tomatoes at each other.

Lesson (2)

3 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

اقرأ وقم بكتابة الشكل الصحيح للكلمة (الكلمات) بين القوسين.

1. We (go) to the park yesterday.
2. Ali (see) his friend Hani last Friday.
3. I (lose) my jacket last night.
4. How did you (feel)?
5. I (look) up and saw birds.
6. I looked around, everything (be) red.
7. My mother gave me a present and (wish) me good luck.
8. I closed my eyes and (sleep).
9. Ahmed (win) the race two weeks ago.
10. Heba (eat) fish for lunch yesterday.

4 Punctuate the following sentences.

اربط العبارات بالعلامات.

1. dina enjoyed La Tomatina
2. who won the match yesterday

5 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words about

اكتب فقرة إبتنائية من (18) كلمة عن:

Kite festival

Guiding words.

(beautiful - world - fly)

Lesson (3) Citizenship

Listen and repeat.

استمع وردد.



garlic



Ful Medames (beans)



olive oil



syrup



basbousa



semolina

Vocabulary المفردات

citizenship	المواطنة	karate	رياضة الكاراتيه	sports	الرياضة
age	العمر / سن	Sinai region	منطقة سيناء	ideas	أفكار
culture	ثقافة	wonderful	رائع	energy	طاقة
national	قومي / وطني	Egyptians	المصريين	helpful	مفيد
half	نصف	history	تاريخ	movie	فيلم
festival	مهرجان	sweet	حلوى المذاق	land	أرض
nature	طبيعة	east	شرق	prize	جائزة
south	جنوب	rich	غني	mountain	جبل

Lesson (3)

Conjugation of verbs

أزمنة الفعل

Present	Past	Present	Past
continue	continued	win	won
describe	described	mean	meant
participate	participated	think	thought
cook	cooked	make	made
serve	served	know	knew

Important expressions and prepositions

عبارات وحروف مرصعة

famous for	How	How
proud of	full of	مملوء بـ
friendly to	helpful to	مساعدة مع
served with	under the age of	

Definitions

تعريفات

special	having something different or that nobody else has
proud	to feel proud of something
region	part of a country
authors	people who write movies and stories
hospitable	to be friendly and welcoming to visitors
serve	give food or drink to someone
basbousa	a thin, sweet semolina cake with syrup

Help your child identify these words.

ساعد طفلك أن يميز عن هذه الكلمات.

Look and read.

نظروا وقراءوا.

What makes us special

We often think about things in our country's history. A country like Egypt is famous for its history and we should continue to celebrate its rich culture. Let's look around us and say why we should be proud of our beautiful country.

دعنا ننظر حولنا، ونقول لماذا نحب عالياً ان نتميز ببلدنا الجميلة.

Here are some ideas.

The food

Our food can be described with one word:

Maybe the most famous is Ful Medames, beans cooked very slowly, with lots of olive oil and ...

يمكن وصف طعامنا بكلمة واحدة: رابعاً: ربما أشهرها الفول المدمس، وهو فول مطبوخ ببطء شديد، يُقدَّم مع الكثير من زيت الزيتون والنوم.

Maybe you want something? How about Basbousa, a thin, sweet cake with syrup.

ربما تريد شيئاً حلو المذاق؟ ماذا عن البسبوسة. كعكة السميد الرقيقة المخلوطة مع شراب.

الطعام



The People

More than half of ... are under the age of 30. This means we are full of energy. We are helpful to each other and we are very friendly to ... We are very ... people.

الإنسان



أكثر من نصف المصريين تحت سن الثلاثين. هذا يعني اننا مملوون بالطاقة نحن متعاونين مع بعضنا البعض ونحن وديون للغاية مع الزوار نحن شعب مصري جداً.



Nature

الطبيعة

Many people think that Egypt is only a desert. It's true that 90% of Egypt is desert, but we also have green lands. Near the Nile it is green and beautiful. There are **mountains** in the south and east. It even snows in the **Sierra Leone**.

يعتقد الكثير من الناس أن مصر ليست سوى صحراء. صحيح أن ٩٠٪ من مصر صحراء. لكن لدينا مساحات خضراء أيضًا بالقرب من النيل هناك مناطق خضراء وجميلة. توجد جبال في الجنوب والشرق. بل وتتساقط ثلوج في منطقة سيلا.



Culture

الثقافة

We make a lot of movies and many of them are **famous**. We have **actors** who won important **prizes**. And of course, we love sports! Anyone who loves karate knows the name of one very famous karate player, **Ferial Abdelaziz**.

نصنع الكثير من الأفلام والعديد منها مشهور لدينا مؤلفون أفلامهم مهمون. وبالنسبة نحن نحب الرياضات! كل من يحب لعبة الكاراتيه يعرف اسم لاعب الكاراتيه المشهور، فريال عبد العزيز.



Did you know ?

Ful medames is a very old dish. Archaeologists found some ful medames in one of the pyramids. It was thousands of years old!

القول المدمس أكلة قديمة جدًا. وقد وجد علماء الآثار بعض القول المدمس في أحد الأهرامات وقدمت عليه آلاف السنين!



Language

Suffix (-ful)

We can make an adjective by adding **-ful** to the end of a verb or a noun.

نستطيع ان نحول الفعل او الاسم الى صفة بـ «-ful»

Word

Adjective

care (v)	careful	دقيق
pain (n)	painful	ألم
beauty (n)	beautiful	جميل
help (v)	helpful	مساعد
wonder (v)	wonderful	مذهل
use (v)	useful	مفيد
color (n/v)	colorful	ملون / ألوان

Note:

The letter "v" in beauty changes into "b" before we add "-ful".

نحول حرف «v» الى حرف «b» قبل ان نضيف «-ful»

Study the following:

I am very careful when I go online.

I hurt my leg. It's very painful.

Alia's dress is beautiful. We all love it.

Those tools are very helpful for fixing our door.

That shirt has red, blue and green stripes. It's very colorful.

Learning about Egypt is amazing. It has an amazing history.

General Activities

1 **Uranium** **Lead** **a** **b** **c** **d**

1. We make a lot of
a) movies b) books c) plays d) chairs
2. Our movies are
a) boring b) serious c) bad d) unknown
3. _____ won important prizes.
a) _____ b) _____ c) Authors d) Vets
4. Ferial Abdelaziz is a _____ player.
a) tennis b) soccer c) handball d) karate

2. $\frac{1}{2} \times \frac{1}{2} = \frac{1}{4}$ (The probability of getting a head on the first coin and a tail on the second coin is $\frac{1}{4}$.)

Egypt is a famous country. More than half of ¹⁾ are under the age of 30. This means we are full of ²⁾. We are helpful to each other and we are very ³⁾ to visitors. We are very people.

3) **Verfahren** a b c d **Quelle** **U. V. W.**

1. Egypt is very _____ for its history.
a) small b) big c) famous d) proud
2. Our food is _____ . I like it.
a) hot b) cold c) awful d) wonderful
3. Egypt is a _____ country.
a) special b) private c) tiny d) small
4. Basbousa is a thin, _____ semolina cake with syrup.
a) long b) short c) sweet d) spicy
5. About 90% of Egypt is _____ .
a) green b) brown c) desert d) lakes

Help your child deal with such questions.

مذبح الضحايا، أو يسمون به من قبل هذه الأسماء

- 6 We have authors who won important
a) prizes b) stores c) matches d) stories
7. Alia's dress is
a) beauty b) beautify c) beautiful d) beautifully
8. Learning about Egypt is
a) wander b) wonderful c) wonder d) wonders
9. I hurt my arm. It's very
a) useful b) careful c) beautiful d) painful
- 10 This picture is very . It has many colors.
a) colored b) colors c) colorful d) coloring

4 Read the text and answer the questions. اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة

We often celebrate things in our country's history. A country like Egypt is famous for its history and we should continue to celebrate its rich culture. Let's look around us and say why we should be proud of our beautiful country. Our food can be described with one word: wonderful! Maybe the most famous is Ful Medames, beans cooked very slowly, served with lots of olive oil and garlic.

A) Choose the correct answer.

- 1) Egypt is famous for its
a) history b) math c) English d) science
- 2) The underlined word "famous" means
a) unknown b) well known c) happy d) proud

B) Answer the following questions.

- 3) Describe our food.
- 4) What's the most famous food in Egypt?

Lesson (3)

اقرأ وصل

5 Read and match.

- | | |
|---------------|---------------------------------------|
| 1) region | a) a thin, sweet semolina cake |
| 2) Basbousa | b) friendly and welcoming to visitors |
| 3) special | c) Alia's dress is beautiful. |
| 4) hospitable | d) part of a country |
| | e) having something different |

1- ()

2- ()

3- ()

4- ()

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

اقرأ وكتب بشكل الصحيح للكلمات التي بين الأقواس

- | | |
|---------------------------------|------------------------------|
| 1. Aya's dress is | (beauty). |
| 2. Learning English is | (wonder). |
| 3. Hend hurt her leg. It's very | (pain). |
| 4. I read a | (use) book yesterday. |
| 5. This butterfly is | (color). |
| 6. My father is | (help). He helps all people. |

7 Punctuate the following sentence. اكتب علامات الترقيم للجملة الآتية

- egypt is famous for its history

8

Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words about:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (18) كلمة عن:

What makes Egypt special

Guiding words:

(history - food - people)

Lessons (4 & 5)

Writing & Project

Vocabulary العفدات

birthday party	invitation
missing	مفقودة information
guest	ضيف address

Extra vocabulary كلمات اضافية

the whole class	sports day
list	قائمة road
musical chairs	لعبة كراسي موسيقية games

Conjugation of

Regular verbs الفعل مضطمة

Irregular verbs افعال غير مضطمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
hope	hoped	bring	أُحضِر brought
prepare	prepared	wear	لبس wore
remember	remember	know	
celebrate	celebrate	eat	
invite	invited	come	جاء came

Important expressions and phrases

See you then!	أراك لاحقاً	It'll be fun!	سيكون ذلك ممتعاً
be ready to...	أن أكون مستعداً	RSVP	بالرجاء رد
please come to...	من فضلكم	I hope you can come.	أتمنى أن تستطيعوا الحضور

Lessons (4 & 5)

Information given at social occasions

معلومات تحتاج أن تعرفها في

- | | |
|----------------------------------|-----------------------|
| 1 The friend's name and address | اسم وصديق |
| 2 The date and time of the party | تاريخ ووقت الحفلة |
| 3 The reason for invitation | سبب الدعوة |
| 4. What to bring | ما تجلبه / تحضره |
| 5. What to wear | ما ترتديه |
| 6. How reply to the invitation | كيفية الرد على الدعوة |

Listen and read.

استمع واقرأ.

Invitation

Dear Ali

دعوة

I'm having a birthday party next Thursday at my house. Can you come? I'm inviting the whole class so all our friends will be there. I want to play some party games so bring some music so we can play musical chairs.

When : Thursday, August 12th

What time : 3 pm - 5 pm

Where : 12 Dene Road(my house!)(next to the library)

What to bring : Something blue

RSVP : 9768324590

I hope you can come.

What is the meaning of RSVP?

The **RSVP** meaning comes from the first letter of each word of the

French phrase **répondre s'il vous plaît** actually means "please reply".

الرد من فضلك

Look, read, and write.

انظر، اقرأ واكتب.

How are a class celebration

Steps to do your research

What are you celebrating?

- Our class' Sports Day.

What are you going to do?

- Water and healthy food.

What are you going to play?

- Play lots of games, have fun, and eat lots of healthy food.

Who are you going to prepare the food?

- The students themselves.

What do you want guests to wear?

- T-shirt and shorts.

Invite your classmates to your 'Class' Sports Day'.

Our Class' Sports Day

General Activities

1 Read and complete the text with words from the box.

اقرأ واكمل النص بكلمات من المربع

to celebrate party place

Dear friend,

It's my sister's birthday party. We're having a party. The 1) _____ will be on _____, 12th August from 3 pm to 5 pm. It will be at my 3) _____. The 2) _____ is 12 Dene Road next to the library. I hope you can come.

2 Print and read the following sentences.

1 what are you celebrating, Omar

2 I'm having a party next Friday.

3 Write an invitation to your friend, inviting him to

اكتب دعوة إلى صديقك لدعوته إلى

Your brother's birthday party

Guiding words:

park 3rd July eat and drink

Review on Unit (9)

Party games ألعاب جماعية

musical chairs	لعبة الكراسي الموسيقية	pass the parcel	لعبة تمرير الحزمة
hide and seek	لعبة الاستعانة	rope pulling	لعبة شد الحبل

Unusual festivals احتفالات غير عادية

Cheese rolling	مهرجان دحرجة الجبن	La Tomatina	مهرجان صلصة الطماطم
Kite festival	مهرجان طيارة ورقية	Chinese New Year	عيد السنة الصينية

Egyptian food الطعام المصري

Ful Medames (beans)	فول مدامس	garlic	بصل	olive oil	زيت زيتون
basbousa	بسبوسة	syrup	عجينة	semolina	سمولينا

Others كلمات أخرى

present	هدية	seeker	الماحث
traditional	تقليدي	proud of	فخور بـ
hospitable	مستضيف كريم	special	خاص
authors	مؤلفون	region	منطقة
wrap	بغلف	unwrap	يفتح
winner	فائز	invitation	دعوة
player	لاعب	birthday party	حفلة عيد ميلاد
national	قومي	guest	ضيف
history	تاريخ	address	عنوان

Past Simple Tense

الزمن البسيط الماضي

يستخدم d, ed, id مع الفعل للماضي

e.g I played tennis yesterday.

الأفعال غير المنتظمة تحفظ كما هي.

e.g I went to the club last week.

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
see	saw يرى	give	gave يعطي
run	ran يجري	tell	told يخبر
fall	fell ساقط	have / has	had
win	won يفوز	throw	threw يرمي / يرمى
fly	flew يطير	wear	wore يرتدي

Suffix (-ful)

Word		Adjective	
beauty	جمال	beautiful	جميل
care	رعاية	careful	حريص
pain	ألم	painful	مؤلم
wonder	يتعجب	wonderful	رائع
color	يلون	colorful	مبهر
help	يساعد	helpful	متعاون
use	يستخدم	useful	مفيد

Writing Corner

Write a paragraph of **EIGHTEEN (18) words about:**

اكتب فقرة (ثمانية عشر) كلمة عن

"How to play hide and seek"

The seeker closes his eyes and counts to ten. The other players hide and the seeker tries to find them. The first player the seeker finds becomes the next seeker.

"Why is Egypt special?"

Egypt is famous for its history and its rich culture. Our food is wonderful. We have some special foods, like ful medames and basbousa. The Egyptians are very friendly and hospitable to visitors. We should be proud of our beautiful country.

"A birthday party"

My friends and I were in the park. We celebrated our friend Ali's birthday. We had a big cake. We played football and flew kites. We were very happy.

"An invitation to a birthday party"

Dear Omar,

I'm having a birthday party next Friday. It will be at my house.

Can you come? All my friends will be there. We'll play some party games and have fun.

When: Friday, May 12th

What time? 6 pm - 8 pm

Where: 12 Orabi Street

RSVP: 384621

I hope you can come.

Dictation on Unit (9)

Exercise 1

Word

Meaning

تقنيدي
شغل الموسيقى
يفتح الهدايا
نوعة تمرير لطرده
لعبة الاستغماية

Word

Meaning

سعب لألعب
هدايا
يلف الهدايا
يبحث
نوع الكراسي الموسيقية

Exercise 2

Word

Meaning

رأس السنة الصينية
مهرجان الطائرة الورقية
حيط
عريب

Word

Meaning

مهرجان دحرجة الحصى
مهرجان ابرشيق بلطمة طم
تقاليد
ش

Exercise 3

Word

Meaning

رائع
السميد
منطقه سياء
كارنيه
يقدم
ثوم
سبوسة

Word

Meaning

فحور
حلو حرق
مصيف / شرب
مؤلف
لموضة
مميز
شرب

Exercise 4

Word

Meaning

دعوة
حفلة عيد ميلاد
عنون

Word

Meaning

معلومات
صيف
يوم راضي

Help your child dictate these words.

ساعد طفلك في تلاه هذه الكلمات

Activities on Unit (9)

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة

- 1 More than half of Egyptians under the age of
 a) 10 b) 20 c) 30 d) 40
- 2 Egyptians are to each other.
 a) helpful b) careful c) painful d) colorful
- 3 Egyptians are very to visitors.
 a) bad b) sad c) friendly d) ugly
- 4 are very hospitable people.
 a) French b) Chinese c) Japanese d) Egyptians

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة

- 1 I'm of my parents. They are successful.
 a) proud b) afraid c) scared d) bad
- 2 Basbousa is a very dessert.
 a) sweet b) salty c) bad d) cold

3 Read and complete the text with words from the box.

اقرأ واكمل النص بكلمات من المربع

1. 2. 3. 4. 5. 6. 7. 8. 9. 10. 11. 12. 13. 14. 15. 16. 17. 18. 19. 20. 21. 22. 23. 24. 25. 26. 27. 28. 29. 30. 31. 32. 33. 34. 35. 36. 37. 38. 39. 40. 41. 42. 43. 44. 45. 46. 47. 48. 49. 50. 51. 52. 53. 54. 55. 56. 57. 58. 59. 60. 61. 62. 63. 64. 65. 66. 67. 68. 69. 70. 71. 72. 73. 74. 75. 76. 77. 78. 79. 80. 81. 82. 83. 84. 85. 86. 87. 88. 89. 90. 91. 92. 93. 94. 95. 96. 97. 98. 99. 100. 101. 102. 103. 104. 105. 106. 107. 108. 109. 110. 111. 112. 113. 114. 115. 116. 117. 118. 119. 120. 121. 122. 123. 124. 125. 126. 127. 128. 129. 130. 131. 132. 133. 134. 135. 136. 137. 138. 139. 140. 141. 142. 143. 144. 145. 146. 147. 148. 149. 150. 151. 152. 153. 154. 155. 156. 157. 158. 159. 160. 161. 162. 163. 164. 165. 166. 167. 168. 169. 170. 171. 172. 173. 174. 175. 176. 177. 178. 179. 180. 181. 182. 183. 184. 185. 186. 187. 188. 189. 190. 191. 192. 193. 194. 195. 196. 197. 198. 199. 200. 201. 202. 203. 204. 205. 206. 207. 208. 209. 210. 211. 212. 213. 214. 215. 216. 217. 218. 219. 220. 221. 222. 223. 224. 225. 226. 227. 228. 229. 230. 231. 232. 233. 234. 235. 236. 237. 238. 239. 240. 241. 242. 243. 244. 245. 246. 247. 248. 249. 250. 251. 252. 253. 254. 255. 256. 257. 258. 259. 260. 261. 262. 263. 264. 265. 266. 267. 268. 269. 270. 271. 272. 273. 274. 275. 276. 277. 278. 279. 280. 281. 282. 283. 284. 285. 286. 287. 288. 289. 290. 291. 292. 293. 294. 295. 296. 297. 298. 299. 300. 301. 302. 303. 304. 305. 306. 307. 308. 309. 310. 311. 312. 313. 314. 315. 316. 317. 318. 319. 320. 321. 322. 323. 324. 325. 326. 327. 328. 329. 330. 331. 332. 333. 334. 335. 336. 337. 338. 339. 340. 341. 342. 343. 344. 345. 346. 347. 348. 349. 350. 351. 352. 353. 354. 355. 356. 357. 358. 359. 360. 361. 362. 363. 364. 365. 366. 367. 368. 369. 370. 371. 372. 373. 374. 375. 376. 377. 378. 379. 380. 381. 382. 383. 384. 385. 386. 387. 388. 389. 390. 391. 392. 393. 394. 395. 396. 397. 398. 399. 400. 401. 402. 403. 404. 405. 406. 407. 408. 409. 410. 411. 412. 413. 414. 415. 416. 417. 418. 419. 420. 421. 422. 423. 424. 425. 426. 427. 428. 429. 430. 431. 432. 433. 434. 435. 436. 437. 438. 439. 440. 441. 442. 443. 444. 445. 446. 447. 448. 449. 450. 451. 452. 453. 454. 455. 456. 457. 458. 459. 460. 461. 462. 463. 464. 465. 466. 467. 468. 469. 470. 471. 472. 473. 474. 475. 476. 477. 478. 479. 480. 481. 482. 483. 484. 485. 486. 487. 488. 489. 490. 491. 492. 493. 494. 495. 496. 497. 498. 499. 500. 501. 502. 503. 504. 505. 506. 507. 508. 509. 510. 511. 512. 513. 514. 515. 516. 517. 518. 519. 520. 521. 522. 523. 524. 525. 526. 527. 528. 529. 530. 531. 532. 533. 534. 535. 536. 537. 538. 539. 540. 541. 542. 543. 544. 545. 546. 547. 548. 549. 550. 551. 552. 553. 554. 555. 556. 557. 558. 559. 560. 561. 562. 563. 564. 565. 566. 567. 568. 569. 570. 571. 572. 573. 574. 575. 576. 577. 578. 579. 580. 581. 582. 583. 584. 585. 586. 587. 588. 589. 590. 591. 592. 593. 594. 595. 596. 597. 598. 599. 600. 601. 602. 603. 604. 605. 606. 607. 608. 609. 610. 611. 612. 613. 614. 615. 616. 617. 618. 619. 620. 621. 622. 623. 624. 625. 626. 627. 628. 629. 630. 631. 632. 633. 634. 635. 636. 637. 638. 639. 640. 641. 642. 643. 644. 645. 646. 647. 648. 649. 650. 651. 652. 653. 654. 655. 656. 657. 658. 659. 660. 661. 662. 663. 664. 665. 666. 667. 668. 669. 670. 671. 672. 673. 674. 675. 676. 677. 678. 679. 680. 681. 682. 683. 684. 685. 686. 687. 688. 689. 690. 691. 692. 693. 694. 695. 696. 697. 698. 699. 700. 701. 702. 703. 704. 705. 706. 707. 708. 709. 710. 711. 712. 713. 714. 715. 716. 717. 718. 719. 720. 721. 722. 723. 724. 725. 726. 727. 728. 729. 730. 731. 732. 733. 734. 735. 736. 737. 738. 739. 740. 741. 742. 743. 744. 745. 746. 747. 748. 749. 750. 751. 752. 753. 754. 755. 756. 757. 758. 759. 760. 761. 762. 763. 764. 765. 766. 767. 768. 769. 770. 771. 772. 773. 774. 775. 776. 777. 778. 779. 780. 781. 782. 783. 784. 785. 786. 787. 788. 789. 790. 791. 792. 793. 794. 795. 796. 797. 798. 799. 800. 801. 802. 803. 804. 805. 806. 807. 808. 809. 810. 811. 812. 813. 814. 815. 816. 817. 818. 819. 820. 821. 822. 823. 824. 825. 826. 827. 828. 829. 830. 831. 832. 833. 834. 835. 836. 837. 838. 839. 840. 841. 842. 843. 844. 845. 846. 847. 848. 849. 850. 851. 852. 853. 854. 855. 856. 857. 858. 859. 860. 861. 862. 863. 864. 865. 866. 867. 868. 869. 870. 871. 872. 873. 874. 875. 876. 877. 878. 879. 880. 881. 882. 883. 884. 885. 886. 887. 888. 889. 890. 891. 892. 893. 894. 895. 896. 897. 898. 899. 900. 901. 902. 903. 904. 905. 906. 907. 908. 909. 910. 911. 912. 913. 914. 915. 916. 917. 918. 919. 920. 921. 922. 923. 924. 925. 926. 927. 928. 929. 930. 931. 932. 933. 934. 935. 936. 937. 938. 939. 940. 941. 942. 943. 944. 945. 946. 947. 948. 949. 950. 951. 952. 953. 954. 955. 956. 957. 958. 959. 960. 961. 962. 963. 964. 965. 966. 967. 968. 969. 970. 971. 972. 973. 974. 975. 976. 977. 978. 979. 980. 981. 982. 983. 984. 985. 986. 987. 988. 989. 990. 991. 992. 993. 994. 995. 996. 997. 998. 999. 1000. 1001. 1002. 1003. 1004. 1005. 1006. 1007. 1008. 1009. 1010. 1011. 1012. 1013. 1014. 1015. 1016. 1017. 1018. 1019. 1020. 1021. 1022. 1023. 1024. 1025. 1026. 1027. 1028. 1029. 1030. 1031. 1032. 1033. 1034. 1035. 1036. 1037. 1038. 1039. 1040. 1041. 1042. 1043. 1044. 1045. 1046. 1047. 1048. 1049. 1050. 1051. 1052. 1053. 1054. 1055. 1056. 1057. 1058. 1059. 1060. 1061. 1062. 1063. 1064. 1065. 1066. 1067. 1068. 1069. 1070. 1071. 1072. 1073. 1074. 1075. 1076. 1077. 1078. 1079. 1080. 1081. 1082. 1083. 1084. 1085. 1086. 1087. 1088. 1089. 1090. 1091. 1092. 1093. 1094. 1095. 1096. 1097. 1098. 1099. 1100. 1101. 1102. 1103. 1104. 1105. 1106. 1107. 1108. 1109. 1110. 1111. 1112. 1113. 1114. 1115. 1116. 1117. 1118. 1119. 1120. 1121. 1122. 1123. 1124. 1125. 1126. 1127. 1128. 1129. 1130. 1131. 1132. 1133. 1134. 1135. 1136. 1137. 1138. 1139. 1140. 1141. 1142. 1143. 1144. 1145. 1146. 1147. 1148. 1149. 1150. 1151. 1152. 1153. 1154. 1155. 1156. 1157. 1158. 1159. 1160. 1161. 1162. 1163. 1164. 1165. 1166. 1167. 1168. 1169. 1170. 1171. 1172. 1173. 1174. 1175. 1176. 1177. 1178. 1179. 1180. 1181. 1182. 1183. 1184. 1185. 1186. 1187. 1188. 1189. 1190. 1191. 1192. 1193. 1194. 1195. 1196. 1197. 1198. 1199. 1200. 1201. 1202. 1203. 1204. 1205. 1206. 1207. 1208. 1209. 1210. 1211. 1212. 1213. 1214. 1215. 1216. 1217. 1218. 1219. 1220. 1221. 1222. 1223. 1224. 1225. 1226. 1227. 1228. 1229. 1230. 1231. 1232. 1233. 1234. 1235. 1236. 1237. 1238. 1239. 1240. 1241. 1242. 1243. 1244. 1245. 1246. 1247. 1248. 1249. 1250. 1251. 1252. 1253. 1254. 1255. 1256. 1257. 1258. 1259. 1260. 1261. 1262. 1263. 1264. 1265. 1266. 1267. 1268. 1269. 1270. 1271. 1272. 1273. 1274. 1275. 1276. 1277. 1278. 1279. 1280. 1281. 1282. 1283. 1284. 1285. 1286. 1287. 1288. 1289. 1290. 1291. 1292. 1293. 1294. 1295. 1296. 1297. 1298. 1299. 1300. 1301. 1302. 1303. 1304. 1305. 1306. 1307. 1308. 1309. 1310. 1311. 1312. 1313. 1314. 1315. 1316. 1317. 1318. 1319. 1320. 1321. 1322. 1323. 1324. 1325. 1326. 1327. 1328. 1329. 1330. 1331. 1332. 1333. 1334. 1335. 1336. 1337. 1338. 1339. 1340. 1341. 1342. 1343. 1344. 1345. 1346. 1347. 1348. 1349. 1350. 1351. 1352. 1353. 1354. 1355. 1356. 1357. 1358. 1359. 1360. 1361. 1362. 1363. 1364. 1365. 1366. 1367. 1368. 1369. 1370. 1371. 1372. 1373. 1374. 1375. 1376. 1377. 1378. 1379. 1380. 1381. 1382. 1383. 1384. 1385. 1386. 1387. 1388. 1389. 1390. 1391. 1392. 1393. 1394. 1395. 1396. 1397. 1398. 1399. 1400. 1401. 1402. 1403. 1404. 1405. 1406. 1407. 1408. 1409. 1410. 1411. 1412. 1413. 1414. 1415. 1416. 1417. 1418. 1419. 1420. 1421. 1422. 1423. 1424. 1425. 1426. 1427. 1428. 1429. 1430. 1431. 1432. 1433. 1434. 1435. 1436. 1437. 1438. 1439. 1440. 1441. 1442. 1443. 1444. 1445. 1446. 1447. 1448. 1449. 1450. 1451. 1452. 1453. 1454. 1455. 1456. 1457. 1458. 1459. 1460. 1461. 1462. 1463. 1464. 1465. 1466. 1467. 1468. 1469. 1470. 1471. 1472. 1473. 1474. 1475. 1476. 1477. 1478. 1479. 1480. 1481. 1482. 1483. 1484. 1485. 1486. 1487. 1488. 1489. 1490. 1491. 1492. 1493. 1494. 1495. 1496. 1497. 1498. 1499. 1500. 1501. 1502. 1503. 1504. 1505. 1506. 1507. 1508. 1509. 1510. 1511. 1512. 1513. 1514. 1515. 1516. 1517. 1518. 1519. 1520. 1521. 1522. 1523. 1524. 1525. 1526. 1527. 1528. 1529. 1530. 1531. 1532. 1533. 1534. 1535. 1536. 1537. 1538. 1539. 1540. 1541. 1542. 1543. 1544. 1545. 1546. 1547. 1548. 1549. 1550. 1551. 1552. 1553. 1554. 1555. 1556. 1557. 1558. 1559. 1560. 1561. 1562. 1563. 1564. 1565. 1566. 1567. 1568. 1569. 1570. 1571. 1572. 1573. 1574. 1575. 1576. 1577. 1578. 1579. 1580. 1581. 1582. 1583. 1584. 1585. 1586. 1587. 1588. 1589. 1590. 1591. 1592. 1593. 1594. 1595. 1596. 1597. 1598. 1599. 1600. 1601. 1602. 1603. 1604. 1605. 1606. 1607. 1608. 1609. 1610. 1611. 1612. 1613. 1614. 1615. 1616. 1617. 1618. 1619. 1620. 1621. 1622. 1623. 1624. 1625. 1626. 1627. 1628. 1629. 1630. 1631. 1632. 1633. 1634. 1635. 1636. 1637. 1638. 1639. 1640. 1641. 1642. 1643. 1644. 1645. 1646. 1647. 1648. 1649. 1650. 1651. 1652. 1653. 1654. 1655. 1656. 1657. 1658. 1659. 1660. 1661. 1662. 1663. 1664. 1665. 1666. 1667. 1668. 1669. 1670. 1671. 1672. 1673. 1674. 1675. 1676. 1677. 1678. 1679. 1680. 1681. 1682. 1683. 1684. 1685. 1686. 1687. 1688. 1689. 1690. 1691. 1692. 1693. 1694. 1695. 1696. 1697. 1698. 1699. 1700. 1701. 1702. 1703. 1704. 1705. 1706. 1707. 1708. 1709. 1710. 1711. 1712. 1713. 1714. 1715. 1716. 1717. 1718. 1719. 1720. 1721. 1722. 1723. 1724. 1725. 1726. 1727. 1728. 1729. 1730. 1731. 1732. 1733. 1734. 1735. 1736. 1737. 1738. 1739. 1740. 1741. 1742. 1743. 1744. 1745. 1746. 1747. 1748. 1749. 1750. 1751. 1752. 1753. 1754. 1755. 1756. 1757. 1758. 1759. 1760. 1761. 1762. 1763. 1764. 1765. 1766. 1767. 1768. 1769. 1770. 1771. 1772. 1773. 1774. 1775. 1776. 1777. 1778. 1779. 1780. 1781. 1782. 1783. 1784. 1785. 1786. 1787. 1788. 1789. 1790. 1791. 1792. 1793. 1794. 1795. 1796. 1797. 1798. 1799. 1800. 1801. 1802. 1803. 1804. 1805. 1806. 1807. 1808. 1809. 1810. 1811. 1812. 1813. 1814. 1815. 1816. 1817. 1818. 1819. 1820. 1821. 1822. 1823. 1824. 1825. 1826. 1827. 1828. 1829. 1830. 1831. 1832. 1833. 1834. 1835. 1836. 1837. 1838. 1839. 1840. 1841. 1842. 1843. 1844. 1845. 1846. 1847. 1848. 1849. 1850. 1851. 1852. 1853. 1854. 1855. 1856. 1857. 1858. 1859. 1860. 1861. 1862. 1863. 1864. 1865. 1866. 1867. 1868. 1869. 1870. 1871. 1872. 1873. 1874. 1875. 1876. 1877. 1878. 1879. 1880. 1881. 1882. 1883. 1884. 1885. 1886. 1887. 1888. 1889. 1890. 1891. 1892. 1893. 1894. 1895. 1896. 1897. 1898. 1899. 1900. 1901. 1902. 1903. 1904. 1905. 1906. 1907. 1908. 1909. 1910. 1911. 1912. 1913. 1914. 1915. 1916. 1917. 1918. 1919. 1920. 1921. 1922. 1923. 1924. 1925. 1926. 1927. 1928. 1929. 1930. 1931. 1932. 1933. 1934. 1935. 1936. 1937. 1938. 1939. 1940. 1941. 1942. 1943. 1944. 1945. 1946. 1947. 1948. 1949. 1950. 1951. 1952. 1953. 1954. 1955. 1956. 1957. 1958. 1959. 1960. 1961. 1962. 1963. 1964. 1965. 1966. 1967. 1968. 1969. 1970. 1971. 1972. 1973. 1974. 1975. 1976. 1977. 1978. 1979. 1980. 1981. 1982. 1983. 1984. 1985. 1986. 1987. 1988. 1989. 1990. 1991. 1992. 1993. 1994. 1995. 1996. 1997. 1998. 1999. 2000. 2001. 2002. 2003. 2004. 2005. 2006. 2007. 2008. 2009. 2010. 2011. 2012. 2013. 2014. 2015. 2016. 2017. 2018. 2019. 2020. 2021. 2022. 2023. 2024. 2025. 2026. 2027. 2028. 2029. 2030. 2031. 2032. 2033. 2034. 2035. 2036. 2037. 2038. 2039. 2040. 2041. 2042. 2043. 2044. 2045. 2046. 2047. 2048. 2049. 2050. 2051. 2052. 2053. 2054. 2055. 2056. 2057. 2058. 2059. 2060. 2061. 2062. 2063. 2064. 2065. 2066. 2067. 2068. 2069. 2070. 2071. 2072. 2073. 2074. 2075. 2076. 2077. 2078. 2079. 2080. 2081. 2082. 2083. 2084. 2085. 2086. 2087. 2088. 2089. 2090. 2091. 2092. 2093. 2094. 2095. 2096. 2097. 2098. 2099. 2100. 2101. 2102. 2103. 2104. 2105. 2106. 2107. 2108. 2109. 2110. 2111. 2112. 2113. 2114. 2115. 2116. 2117. 2118. 2119. 2120. 2121. 2122. 2123. 2124

Activities

4 Read the text and answer the questions.

Many people think that Egypt is only a desert. It's true that 90% of Egypt is desert, but we also have green lands. Near the Nile it is green and beautiful. There are mountains in the south and east. It even snows in the Sinai region.

A) Choose the correct answer.

- 1) It's true that _____ of Egypt is desert.
a) 10% b) 90% c) 80% d) 20%
- 2) The underlined word "near" is opposite to
a) beautiful b) small c) big d) far

B) Answer the following questions.

- 3) Where does it snow in Egypt?
- 4) What do people think of Egypt?

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

1. We _____ (win) the match yesterday.
2. Hend _____ (celebrate) her birthday last month.
3. The Egyptian food is _____ (amazing).
4. You should be _____ (care) when you cross the road.

6 Punctuate the following sentence.

i'm having a birthday party

7 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words about:

Egypt

(history - proud of - hospitable)

1) Listen and choose the correct answer

1. Our food can be described with one word:
 a) sweet b) salty c) spicy d) sour
2. The most famous food is
 a) hummus b) kous c) basbousa d) rice
3. Basbousa is
 a) a drink b) a fruit c) a cake d) a vegetable

2) Read and complete the dialogue

house - See - party - When

- Reem : Hello, Sara. I'd like to invite you to my birthday party.
- Sara : 2) is it?
- Reem : Next Thursday at 3 pm.
- Sara : Where is it?
- Reem : At my house. Remember to wear something blue.
- Sara : Ok, 4) you then.

3) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d

1. I wrapped the present in colorful paper.
 a) up b) down c) in d) out
2. In cheese festival, they push round cheese down the hill.
 a) rolling b) running c) jumping d) swimming
3. Egyptian people are
 a) interested in b) interested in c) interested in d) interested in
4. Hany the race yesterday.
 a) won b) lost c) drew d) tied
5. I English yesterday.
 a) studied b) reviewed c) revised d) practiced

4) Reorder the words to make sentences

- 1) eyes - my - I - closed - ran - and - .
 I went to the park .
- 2) famous - for is history its .
 you are celebrating ?
- 3) beautiful - dress - Alia's - is - .

Activities on Review (3)

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d

استمع واكتب الإجابة الصحيحة من بين a, b, c, أو d

1 Last weekend we went to

- a) Cairo b) Aswan c) Alexandria d) Damietta

2 Grandma and grandpa live by the

- a) mall b) sea c) farm d) stadium

3 The sea was deep and

- a) red b) pink c) blue d) black

4 We saw lots of

- a) fish b) birds c) animals d) plants

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة

1 There are lots of high _____ in the city.

- a) buildings b) parks c) rivers d) lakes

2 I'm very _____. I got the highest mark.

- a) sad b) worried c) pleased d) angry

3 Read and complete the text with words from the box

اقرأ واكمل النص بالكلمات من الصندوق

summer - winter - spring - parks - lakes

My favorite festival is Sham El-Nessim. It is in 1)

We eat 2) _____ eggs. We wear clothes. We go to 3)

It is so special because the 4) _____ is nice.

4

Read the text and answer the questions.

Last year we had a party for the International Children's Book Day. It was fun. We dressed like our favorite book characters. We all brought in food connected to our favorite books.

For example, I made a cake in the shape of a caterpillar. When I was little, my favorite story was "The Very Hungry Caterpillar".

A storyteller came to our classroom and told us lots of stories and poems. The school even gave everyone a free book!

A) Choose the correct answer.

1) Last year we had a

a) picnic

b) test

c) trip

d) party

2) A storyteller told us lots of

a) notebooks

b) stories

c) books

d) novels

B) Answer the following questions.

3) How was the party?

4) What shape of cake did you make?

5

Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

اقرأ واكتب الشكل الصحيح للكلمات التي بين الأقواس.

1 My mother

me an exciting story last night.

2 Egypt is a

country.

3 There

a big shopping area in the past.

4 How did Ali

to school yesterday?

6

Punctuate the following sentence.

ما الذي يجعل مصر خاصة

what makes Egypt special

7

Write a paragraph of (8) words about:

اكتب فقرة إثنائية من (8) كلمة عن

Guiding words

Your favorite festival

(Eid Al Fitr - eat kahk - new clothes)

English Language Performance Tasks

مهام اللغة الإنجليزية

School :

Name :

You want to tell your friend about the Nile.

⇒ Write about:

- Where is it?
- How long is it?
- What animals live in it?
- How should we keep it?

⇒ Draw the Nile and the land around it

School :

Name :

You want to invite your friend to your birthday party

⇒ Write about:

- the date
- the place
- the food
- the number of friends

⇒ Draw a picture of the party

Be a responsible person

أنا شخص مسؤول



Unit 10

I enjoy my life

أستمتع بحياتي



- listen, read, research, and write about social media
- give advice with
- learn and say words that start with ().
- read and listen to a short story.
- write about the and of computer games.
- research and make a leaflet

Lesson (1) An Interesting Research

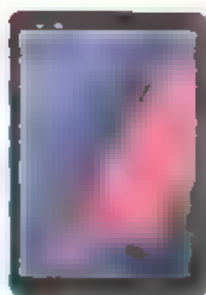
Listen and repeat.

استمع وردّد.

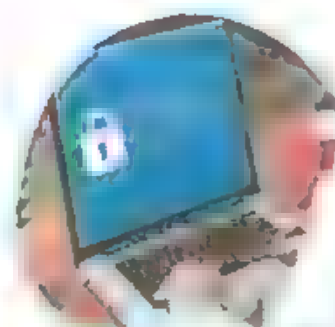


cell phone

هاتف محمول



tablet



log in / into

يسجل اندخول إلى



copy



Password

password



presentation

عرض تقديمي



chat

دردش



message

برمحل رسالة / رسالة

Lesson (1)

Extra vocabulary كلمات إضافية

| | | | |
|-------------|---------------|------------|-----------|
| website | موقع إلكتروني | chameleon | كameleon |
| information | معلومات | the same | نفس الشيء |
| idea | فكرة | respectful | محترم |
| own | يملك / خاص | great | عظيم |
| amazing | مدهش | nice | لطيف |

Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs فعل منطبعة

Irregular verbs فعال غير منطبعة

| Present | Past | Present | Past |
|----------|------------|---------|-------|
| log in | logged in | find | found |
| create | created | write | wrote |
| message | messaged | send | said |
| remember | remembered | get | got |
| copy | copied | know | knew |
| chat | chatted | make | made |
| plan | planned | say | said |

Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

| | | | |
|----------------|------------------|-------------------------|------------------|
| log into in | تسجيل في | They're so interesting! | هم مدهشون جداً |
| Wow! | واو! | That's interesting! | هذا مدهش |
| Hooray! | هوراي! | make a presentation | إعداد عرض تقديمي |
| What else? | ماذا بعد؟ | the same color as | نفس اللون |
| do research | أخذ بحث | chat with | تحدث مع |
| all around | في كل مكان | homework | واجب منزلي |
| the same .. as | نفس الشيء .. مثل | | |

Listen and read.

استمع واقرأ.



Mom What are you doing, Dalia?

Dalia I'm doing my homework about
They're so interesting! I this library website
and I created a password to get information.

فوق بداهة واجبي المنزلي عن الحرائق إليهم منيرون للاهتمام لقد قمت بتسجيل لدخول إلى موقع
لصكينة الإلكترونية وقمت بإنشاء كلمة مرور للحصول على المعلومات

Mom What does it say?

Dalia Chameleons change color. They are the same color
as the place where they are.

هم الحدي لونها يكون لونها مثل لون المكان الذي تتواجد فيه

Mom Wow! That's interesting! What else?

واو! هذا مثير للاهتمام! ماذا أيضًا؟

Dalia They have amazing eyes and they can see all around
but I need to more I want to message
Yara and with her. She knows some great
websites.

منهم عيون رائعة وبمكثهم الرؤية في كل اتجاه لكمي بحاجة إلى إجراء لمزيد من
البحث أريد مراسلة يارا والتحدث إليها. بها تعرف بعض المواقع الإلكترونية الرائعة

Mom Are you making a about chameleons?

هل ستقدمي عرضًا عن الحرائق؟

Dalia Yes, I'm making a presentation with Yara. I need to look at
lots of websites and find some nice pictures.

ع بدرا أحد - إلى لقاء نظرة على الكثير من المواقع الإلكترونية ونعثر على بعض

Mom Remember to be respectful. Don't information.
Find ideas and write your own words.

تذكرين أن تسمى بالاحترام لا تسيحي لمعلومات اعترتي على الأفكار وكني كلماتك الخاصة

General Activities

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة.

- Last week I had some homework about
a) monkeys b) elephants c) chameleons d) tigers
- I logged into a _____ website.
a) library b) park c) zoo d) school
- I found _____ on the website.
a) clothes b) information c) money d) shoes
- Miss Lamia loved our
a) book b) homework c) presentation d) website

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

- A _____ is a small lizard that can change its color.
a) camel b) chameleon c) monkey d) rat
- I _____ into the library website to get information.
a) log b) go c) walk d) tag
- You should create a strong _____ for your mobile phone.
a) word b) words c) password d) crossword
- I need to do _____ about energy.
a) peach b) research c) sports d) beach
- I want to _____ Yara and chat with her.
a) message b) sleep c) write d) read
- I am making a _____ about chameleons.
a) present b) presentation c) picture d) information
- Don't _____ information. Find ideas and write your own words.
a) read b) copy c) make d) do
- We had a _____ to plan the presentation.
a) bat b) cat c) chat d) hat

3 Read and complete the text with words from the box.

اقرأ واكمل النص بكلمات من المربع.

information - interesting - password - research - logged

Yesterday, I had some homework about chameleons.
They're so _____ ! I _____ into a library website
and created a _____ to get _____

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

4

Read the text and answer the questions. اقرأ النص و اجاب على الاسئلة

Last week I had some homework about chameleons. I logged into a library website and created a password. I found information. I worked with my friend, Yara. I sent her a message about the information. We had a chat to plan the presentation. She did research on her cell phone because she can't use a tablet. Our teacher, Miss Lamia, loved our presentation! Hooray!

A) Choose the correct answer.

1. Last week I had some homework about
 a) fish b) camels c) chameleons d) fruits
2. I logged into a _____ website.
 a) library b) park c) school d) zoo

B) Answer the following questions.

1. Why did Yara do research on her cell phone?

2. Summarize the text in one sentence.

5

Put the following sentences in order. ضع علامات الترقيم للأمر الآتي

1. what are you doing, Dalia

2. I'm making presentation with yara.

6

Write a paragraph of **EIGHTEEN 18** words. اكتب فقرة (18) كلمة عن:

البحث عن المعلومات على الانترنت

Guiding words:

do research- login password

Lesson (2) Staying Safe Online

Listen and repeat.

استمع وردّد.



bully



have fun

مرح / نستمتع بوقته



contact



friends

أصدقاء



share ideas

ببشارك الأفكار



keep my
password secret

حافظ على سرية كلمة المرور



personal information

معلومات شخصية



tag

Extra vocabulary كلمات إضافية

| | | |
|---------------|----------|--------------|
| safe websites | online | على الإنترنت |
| photo | creative | مبتكر / صوري |
| information | scary | مخيف |
| ugly | strong | قوي |
| adult | stupid | غبى |

Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present

Past

| | |
|---------|-----------|
| contact | contacted |
| share | shared |
| tag | tagged |
| bully | bullied |
| check | checked |

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present

Past

| | |
|-------|---------|
| find | found |
| think | thought |
| say | said |
| keep | kept |
| take | took |

Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف حالية

| | | |
|------------------|---------------------|---------------|
| turn off | pros and cons | مميزات وعيوب |
| at night | accept to | يوافق أن |
| make friends | check with | يتحقق مع |
| only friends | have a problem with | لديه مشكلة مع |
| That's horrible! | That's really cool! | هذا رائع جداً |

Lesson (2)

Listen and read.

استمع واقراء.



'Social media' is when we use computers and other devices to share ideas, thoughts, and information and have fun.

وسائل التواصل الاجتماعي هي عندما نستخدم أجهزة الكمبيوتر والأجهزة الأخرى لمشاركة الأفكار والحواطر والمعلومات والاستمتاع بوقتنا.



Pros and cons of social media



Pros مميزات



You can have fun.

يمكنك التمتع بوقت فراغ ممتع.



You can learn interesting things.

يمكنك تعلم أشياء مثيرة.



You can share photos.

يمكنك مشاركة الصور.



You can be creative.

يمكنك أن تكون مبتكراً.



You can play games.

يمكنك لعب الألعاب.



You can find information for your homework.

يمكنك العثور على معلومات لواجبك المنزلي.

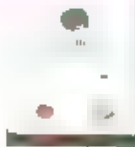


You can talk to friends and family.

يمكنك المحادثة مع الأصدقاء والعائلة.



Don't



People you don't know
can contact you.

يمكن للأشخاص لا يعرفهم الأشخاص بك



Some people can bully you.

يمكن أن يتعرض للتنمر من بعض الأشخاص



People can tag you in photos
when you don't want them to.

يمكن للأشخاص الإشارة لك في صور وأنت لا ترغب أن
يقعوا ذلك



People can take your personal
information.

يمكن للأشخاص الحصول على معلوماتك الشخصية

Staying safe online

البقاء آمناً عبر الإنترنت



Do (✓)

You **should** accept to be friends
only with people you know.

يجب أن تقبل أن تكون أصدقاء بالأشخاص الذين تعرفهم

You **should** keep your password
secret.

يجب عليك أن تحتفظ بكلمة المرور الخاصة بك

You **should** keep your personal
information secret.

يجب عليك أن تحتفظ بمعلوماتك الشخصية

Don't (✗)



You **shouldn't** give your
password to **anyone** who asks.

يجب ألا تعطي كلمة المرور الخاصة بك لأي شخص يطلبها

You **shouldn't** tell everyone
your birthday and your phone
number.

يجب ألا تشارك الجميع بعيد ميلادك ورقم هاتفك

You **shouldn't** make new
friends online.

يجب ألا تكون صديقاً جديداً عبر الإنترنت

Online bullying

Magdy Wael, you know I started at the new school?

والل هل تعرف اني بدأت في المدرسة الجديدة؟

Wael Yes. Is it nice?

نعم. هل هي جميلة؟

Magdy Yes, but I experienced online bullying. There was a boy in my class, Sherif, who was sending me messages.

Wael What did he say?

Magdy He said I was ugly and no one liked me.

قال لي اني عبي ولا يحبني احد.

Wael Did you tell anyone?

هذا شيء فظيع! هل اخبرت احدا؟

Magdy Yes, my dad. He went to the school and talked to my teacher. He showed my teacher the messages from Sherif.

Wael What did your teacher do?

Magdy She spoke to Sherif and Sherif's parents. They all stopped the bullying. They said I shouldn't talk to Sherif online.

Wael And Sherif?

وشريف؟

Magdy He stopped talking to me. But I feel much happier now! I know what I should do about online bullying now - keep the messages and delete them quickly.

الآن - احفظ بالرسائل واخبر شخصا بالغاسريفا

Wael When are you coming to see me?

هذا رائع حقا! متى ستاتي لزيارتي؟

Language

Giving advice:

Subject + **should** + **Inf.**

We use "should" to talk about things that are good for us to do.

- I should only give my phone number to my friends.
- I should turn my phone off at night.

Subject + **shouldn't** + **Inf.**

We use "shouldn't" to talk about things that are bad for us to do.

- I shouldn't use my phone late at night.

You shouldn't make new friends online with people you don't know.

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- You **should** accept to be friends only with people you know.
a) should b) shouldn't c) must d) can't
- You **shouldn't** keep your password secret.
a) can't b) shouldn't c) must d) aren't
- You **shouldn't** give your password to anyone who asks.
a) shouldn't b) must c) must d) should
- You **shouldn't** tell everyone your birthday and your phone number.
a) want b) shouldn't c) must d) should
- You should **keep** your personal information secret.
a) keep b) keeps c) kept d) keeping

2 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

اقرأ واكتب الشكل الصحيح للكلمات التي بين الأقواس

- I **shouldn't** give my phone number to everyone.
- He shouldn't **leave** his bike here.
- You **should** see the doctor when you are ill.
- We should **eat** healthy food.

General Activities

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

اسمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. Magdy started a new
a) zoo b) school c) park d) class
2. Magdy had a problem with online
a) shopping b) playing c) bullying d) studying
3. Sherif said that Magdy was
a) stupid b) smart c) fast d) nice
4. Now Magdy is
a) stupid b) bad c) sad d) happy

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. You tell your parents when someone bullies you online.
a) should b) shouldn't c) can't d) mustn't
2. I keep my password secret.
a) can't b) mustn't c) should d) shouldn't
3. I give my password to anyone.
a) should b) must c) can d) shouldn't
4. Facebook is the most famous social website.
a) life b) media c) device d) equipment
5. People can ideas on social media.
a) no b) share c) chat d) stay

3 Read and complete the text with words from the box.

اقرأ واكمل النص بكلمات من الصندوق

teacher - websites - should - adult - contact

To be safe online, you 1) use strong password. You
should 2) only friends. You should use safe 3)
If you have any problem, you should check with an 4)

4

Read the text and answer the questions

"Social media" is when we use computers and other devices to share ideas, thoughts and information and have fun. Social media have some pros. You can have fun. You can share photos. You can talk to your friends and your family. You can find information for your homework. You can be creative. You can play games. But they have some cons, too. People you don't know can contact you. People can take your personal information. Some people can bully you.

A) Choose the correct answer.

- 1) You can share _____ on social media.
a) phones b) photos c) books d) paper
- 2) Some people can _____ you on social media.
a) play b) bully c) pull d) learn

B) Answer the following questions.

3) Who can you talk to on social media?

4) How can social media help you do your homework?

5

Read and write the correct form of the verb

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للتعليق

1. You should _____ your password secret.
need
2. You _____ smoke in the hospital.
should
3. You shouldn't _____ late for school.
4. You should _____ (studies) hard.

6

Punctuate the following sentence

you can play games

7

Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words

اكتب فقرة الثمانية من (18) كلمة عن.

Pros and cons of social media

Guiding words:

(fun -information -tag -bully)

Lesson (3) Reading

Vocabulary

المفردات

| | | | |
|----------------|-------------|-----------|--------------|
| neighbors | جيران | problem | مشكلة |
| restaurant | مطعم | one hour | ساعة واحدة |
| unhealthy | | apartment | |
| matter | مسألة / أمر | together | معاً / سوياً |
| the same | نفس الشيء | outside | خارج |
| computer games | ألعاب حاسوب | the same | |

Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

أفعال منتظمة

| Present | Past | Present | Past |
|---------|---------|------------|------------|
| stop | stopped | meet | met |
| agree | agreed | know | knew |
| thank | thanked | give | gave |
| decide | decided | leave | left |
| ask | asked | understand | understood |

Important expressions and prepositions

| | |
|--------------------|-----------------------|
| at the restaurant | play with |
| What's the matter? | have fun |
| go outside | play together |
| decide to | at the end of |
| do homework | That's a lovely idea. |

Read the story and answer.

اقرأ القصة وأجب.

كيف ساعد اثنان من الحيران بعضهما البعض؟



Hadeer met her neighbor, Rania, at the restaurant. Rania was sad.

Hadeer asked, "What's the matter, my friend?" Rania answered, "It's my children, Nancy and Nader. They love playing computer games. They don't do their homework. They don't go outside. I don't know what to do".

يؤذنان واحيم مدرسي ولا يخرجن، لا اهدف مد

Hadeer said, "Yes, it is a problem. Tarek, my son, is the same. He often plays computer games. That's really **unhealthy**. Children should stop playing after one hour. They should do **other things**. They should play with their friends. They should go to the park".

قلت هدير: نعم، ب مشكلة التي في اناج نفس ال. اناج ما يعجب اناج القصة و هدير مد

ن يدهنو، نى اناجديقه

Rania said, "Yes, I agree." Hadeer said, "Let's find games where they can play with friends. Tarek would love to play more with Nader. Can Nader come to our apartment? They can play together and have fun." Rania said, "That's a lovely idea. And they can go to the park together. Thank you, Hadeer!"

اذا اناج ما يعجب اناج القصة و هدير مد

اكثر مع نادر. هل يمكن ان ياتي نادر الى مقعدنا؟ نادر يحب اللعب مع والاسمعع فيت وايضا: "هدير هدير مد
 رهاب الى الحصة مع شكرت نادر

Lesson (3)

- 1) Why was Rania unhappy?
- 2) Where did Hadeer and Rania meet?
- 3) What advice did Hadeer give her friend?

Tip!

You can add **un-** at the beginning of a word to get the opposite meaning.



healthy

→



unhealthy

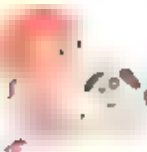


happy

→



unhappy

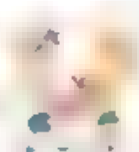


kind

→



unkind



Give the opposite of the words using the prefix "un-".

1) usual →

2) tidy →

3) kind →

4) like →

5) clear →

6) finished →

Help your child use **un-** to give opposites.

ساعد طفلك أن يستخدم **un-** لإعطاء عكس الكلمات.

General Activities

1

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة

Hadeer met her neighbour, Rania, at the

a) cafe

b) restaurant

c) park

d) school

2. Rania was

a) sad

b) happy

c) angry

d) smart

Rania's

love playing computer games.

a) parents

b) neighbors

c) friends

d) children

4. They don't do their

a) food

b) exercises

c) homework

d) rooms

2

Read and complete the text with words from the box.

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من المربع

Noha and Nahla are neighbors and friends. They live in a small apartment.

Noha and Nahla are neighbors and friends. They live in a small apartment. They go to the family club, but Noha was sad. Nahla wanted to know why her friend looked sad. Noha said that her children Habiba and Sama love playing 1) _____ games, which is really unhealthy. They don't have time to do their homework or go 2) _____. Nahla suggested inviting Noha's children to her 3) _____ where they can play with her children and have fun.

3

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة

They love

a) cooking

b) playing

c) eating

computer games.

d) drinking

2. They don't

a) make

b) did

c) do

their homework.

d) play

Playing computer games for a long time is

a) healthy

b) unhealthy

c) good

d) kind

- 4 Children can play together and _____ fun.
 a) play b) sleep c) read d) have
5. _____ is the matter?
 a) Why b) Where c) What d) How
- 6 Smoking is very _____. It's bad for you.
 a) unhealthy b) healthy c) kind d) good

4 Read the text and answer the questions. اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة.

Hadeer met her neighbor, Rania, at the restaurant. Rania was sad. Her children Nancy and Nader love playing computer games. They don't do their homework. They don't go outside. She doesn't know what to do. Tarek, Hadeer's son, is the same problem. That's really unhealthy. Children should stop playing after one hour. They should play with their friends. They should go to the park.

A) Choose the correct answer.

- 1) Rania is Hadeer's _____
 a) neighbor b) child c) sister d) grandma
- 2) Rania's children love _____
 a) playing football b) playing tennis
 c) playing computer games d) playing basketball

B) Answer the following questions.

- 3) Where did Hadeer and Rania meet?
 4) When should children stop playing computer games?

5 Punctuate the following sentence. ضع علامات الترقيم في الجملة التالية.

where did Hadeer and Rania meet

Lessons (4 & 5)

Writing & Projects

Vocabulary

المفردات

| | | | |
|----------|------------|----------|-------------------|
| pros | مزايا | parents | أولدين |
| cons | عيوب | screen | شاشة |
| reason | سبب / امور | team | فريق |
| prize | جائزة | leaflet | نشرة كتيب |
| opinion | رأي | headings | العناوين الرئيسية |
| too much | كثير جدًا | together | معا / سوا |

Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs

المستعمل

Irregular verbs

المستعمل

| Present | Past | Present | Past |
|---------|----------|---------|-------|
| need | needed | say | said |
| solve | solved | give | gave |
| believe | believed | spend | spent |
| enjoy | enjoyed | make | made |
| watch | watched | find | found |

Important expressions and prepositions

عبارات مهمة وحرف جر

| | | | |
|-------------------|------|-------------------|-----------|
| good for | مفيد | find a prize | يجد جائزة |
| bad for | ضار | search for | يبحث عن |
| spend hours | | in my opinion | |
| solve problems | | give advice about | |
| at the end | | make friends | |
| on the other hand | | find out | |

Pros and cons of computer games

Paragraph 1

Bad things about computer games

Many people say that computer games are bad for children. Children can spend many hours on their computers and tablets. They look at the screen and they don't go outside or do their homework. Parents say this is not healthy for their children.

Paragraph 2

Good things about computer games

But, on the other hand, there are some reasons why computer games are good for children. In some games, children need to solve problems. Some computer games need teams, so children make friends and play with their family.

Paragraph 3

My opinion

I really like computer games where I go outside. I go with my uncle and my friends. We like these games because you find a prize at the end. In my opinion, we can enjoy games, but we need to have other things in our lives like sports and time with our family.

Pros

- Children need to solve problems.
- They can have prizes.
- They make friends.
- They play with their family.

Cons

- They spend many hours on computers.
- They don't go outside or do homework.
- It is not healthy for children.
- They make them lazy.

How to write a pros and cons essay

كيف يكتب مقالاً عن مميزات وعيوب شيء ما

Begin your essay by introducing your topic.

ابدأ مقالتك بمقدمة عن الموضوع الذي تتحدث عنه

The main body usually consists of two paragraphs: The first paragraph presents the pros of the issue and the second paragraph presents the cons of the issue.

المذكرة: الموضوع الرئيسي عادة من قسمين: يقدم أول فقرة إيجابيات القضية ويعرض الفقرة الثانية سلبيات القضية

In the final paragraph, give your opinion.



عند كتابة مميزات وعيوب شيء ما، ينبغي أن تستخدم لعبارة التالية

1- Many people think that

They also believe that

يعتقد كثير من الناس

On the other hand, some people think that (To show contrast)

٢ ومن ناحية أخرى، يعتقد بعض الناس (لإيضاح التناقض)

In my opinion, (To give an opinion)

Watching too much TV

Paragraph 1

Many people think that watching too much TV is bad for children as they spend too many hours watching it. They also believe that it is a waste of time.

Paragraph 2

On the other hand, some people think that watching TV is good for children. They can watch educational programs and football matches. They also think that it is useful. Children can watch religious programs.

Paragraph 3

In my opinion, we can enjoy watching TV, but we should watch useful programs.

Project

Look and read the leaflet.

STOP ONLINE BULLYING NOW

Research بحث

- Find out about bullying online
- Look for help online

- تعرف على التنمر عبر الإنترنت.
- ابحث عن المساعدة عن الإنترنت.

What to do ماذا تفعل

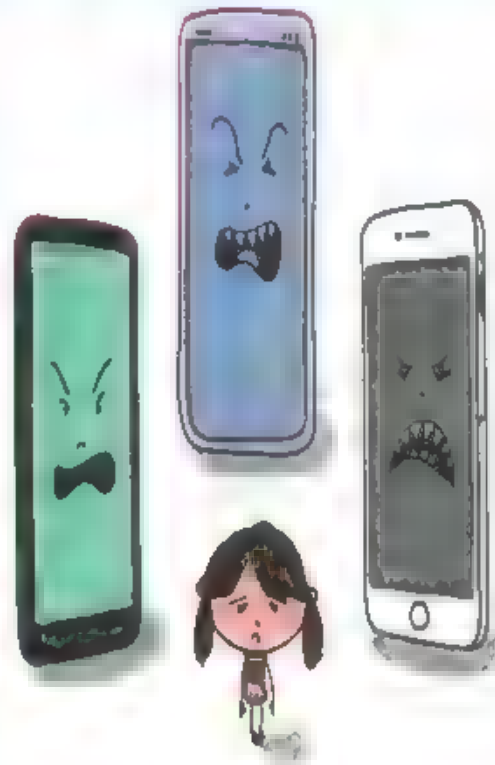
- Tell people about bullying online
- Give advice about bullying

- أخبر الأشخاص عن التنمر عبر الإنترنت.
- قدم نصائح عن التنمر.

What to do more ماذا تفعل أكثر

- Make posters or leaflets and put them around the school
- Talk to teachers and parents

- صمم ملصقات أو منشورات وضعها في أنحاء المدرسة.
- تحدث إلى المعلمين وأولياء الأمور.



General Activities

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة.

- Many people say that computer games are _____ for children.
a) bad b) good c) useful d) nice
- Children can spend _____ hours on their computers.
a) few b) many c) small d) big
- Children don't go _____ while playing games.
a) inside b) indoor c) outside d) into
- Parents say that playing computer games isn't _____.
a) healthy b) good c) well d) unhealthy

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

- Computer games are bad _____ children.
a) in b) at c) by d) for
- Children can spend many hours _____ their computers.
a) in b) for c) on d) at
- In some games, children need to _____ problems.
a) solve b) make c) drink d) play
- In some games, children _____ friends and play with their family.
a) do b) make c) play d) eat
- There are pros and _____ of computer games.
a) point b) cons c) coins d) cans
- In my _____, computers are good for children.
a) think b) believe c) idea d) opinion

3 Read and complete the text with words from the box.

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من المربع.

spend - healthy - screen - bad - homework

Many people say that computer games are bad for children. Children can 1) _____ many hours on their computers and tablets. They look at the 2) _____ and they don't go outside, or do their 3) _____. Parents say this is not 4) _____ for their children.

4 Read the text and answer the questions. اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة.

Computers are very important. We need them everywhere. They are necessary for everyone. Computers have many pros and cons. They are bad for children because they spend many hours playing games. They look at the screen and they don't go outside or do their homework. Parents think this is not healthy for their children. On the other hand, computers are also good for them. In some games they need to solve problems. Some computer games need teams, so children make friends and play with their family.

A) Choose the correct answer.

- 1) Computers have many _____ and cons.
a) pears b) pros c) bears d) prices
- 2) The underlined word "unhealthy" is opposite of _____.
a) good b) unhealthy c) kind d) nice

B) Answer the following questions.

- 3) What do children need in some games?
- 4) Do children go outside while playing games?

5 Punctuate the following sentence. صح جملته بالترقيم لتعني العربية.

children can spend many hours playing games

6 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words about:

اكتب فقرة (18) كلمة عن:

Pros and cons of social media

Guiding words

(good - research - homework)

Review on Unit (10)

Social Media

| | | | |
|---------------|--------------|------------|----------------|
| cell phone | هاتف محمول | tablet | تابلت |
| password | | message | |
| copy | نسخ | chat | تحدث |
| presentation | | chameleon | |
| log in / into | يسجل دخول | bully | يقتهر / التنمر |
| contact | يتصل | have fun | يضحك |
| online | على الانترنت | opinion | أي |
| tag | يضع / إشارة | neighbours | جيران |
| unhealthy | | unhappy | |
| pros | مزايا | good for | مفيد لـ |
| cons | عيوب | bad for | ضار لـ |

(✓) Pros of social media

- You can have fun.
- You can find information for your research / homework.
- You can learn interesting things.

(✗) Cons of social media

- Some people can bully you.
- People you don't know can contact you.
- People can take your personal information.

Giving advice

should + inf.

I only my phone number to my friends.

shouldn't + inf.

- We shouldn't sleep late.

Writing Corner



Write a paragraph of **EIGHTEEN (18)** words about it

اكتب فقرة (لشأنه من (١٨ كلمة عن:

----- "Social media"

Social media is when we use our computers to share ideas. You can have fun. You can play games. On the other hand, some people can bully you. People can tag you in photos.

"Pros and cons of social media"

Many people think that social media is useful. We can post messages. We can search for information very easily. On the other hand, some people think that social media is bad. Children waste their time. They spend many hours playing computer games.

"An interesting research"

Last week, I did an interesting research about the panda. I logged into the library website to get information. I messaged Yara because she knows some great websites. Our teacher liked our research.

"Online bullying"

Online bullying is to say unkind words about someone on social media. We should give advice about bullying. We should make posters or leaflets and put them around the school to stop this bad habit.

Dictation on Unit (10)

Word

Meaning

كلمه مرور

يجرى بحثاً

يسجن دحول

محترم

عرض

Word

Meaning

الحرىء

رسالة

يدردش

بنسخ

نسب

Word

Meaning

يتصل

يشير إلى شخص في صورة

يقنم

معلومات

مبدع

Word

Meaning

يشارك الأفكار

غبي

مميزات وعيوب

أصدقاء

مخيف

Word

Meaning

مشكلة

مسألة / أمر

يقابل

يلعب مع

شقة سكنية

Word

Meaning

جيران

غير صحي

يقرر

يمرح

مقا

Word

Meaning

شاشة

في رأى

شهره - كتيب

الوالدين

العناوين الرئيسية

Word

Meaning

يقضي ساعات على

يحل مشكلات

يكشف

فريق

جائزة

Activities on Unit (10)

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة

- Last week I had some homework about .
a) spiders b) fish c) chameleons d) birds
- I _____ into a library website.
a) logged b) played c) created d) studied
- I worked _____ my friend, Yara.
a) at b) with c) to d) in
- Miss Lamia _____ our presentation.
a) hated b) thanked c) threw d) loved

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة

- I use the _____ to make calls.
a) computer b) radio c) TV d) phone
- I created a _____ to get information.
a) password b) card c) website d) phone

3 Read and complete the text with words from the box.

اقرأ واكمل النص بكلمات من المربع

into - password - logged - interesting - chameleons

I'm Ramy. I'm doing my homework about 1) _____ .

They are so 2) _____ . I logged 3) _____ a library website

and I created a 4) _____ to get information.

4

Read the text.

اقرأ النص بعناية.

My name is Omar. I'm in primary four. I'm ten years old. I go to school every day. I get up at six o'clock. My school is near my home, so I go on foot. My school is big and clean. My teachers are kind and helpful. I love my school very much.

A) Choose the correct answer.

- 1) Omar is in primary
 - a) five
 - b) four
 - c) three
 - d) six
- 2) The underlined word "near" is opposite of
 - a) far
 - b) long
 - c) short
 - d) fast

B) Answer the following questions

- 3) When does Omar get up?
- 4) How are the teachers at Omar's school?

5

Read the text.

اقرأ النص بعناية.

نحن نكتب مقالة عن الإنترنت.

- 1 We should talk to people we don't know online.
- 2 Esraa should study hard.
- 3 You must stay safe online.
- 4 Eman should report her friends.

6

Put a + or -

ضع علامة + أو -

I worked with my friend, Yara

7

Write a paragraph. SIGNIFY IS

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٦) كلمة عن:

A car is very

Guiding words:

interesting amazing eyes see

1) Listen and choose the correct answer.

- 1 Last week I had some homework about .
a) weak b) tall c) long d) strong
- 2 I logged into a library .
a) weak b) tall c) long d) strong
- 3 I created a password to get information.
a) weak b) tall c) long d) strong

2) Read and complete the dialogues.

help - should - unhappy - bullied

Anmed : Why are you ¹⁾ ?

1 Someone me on social media.

You tell your parents.

I told them and they will me.

3) Choose the correct answer from A, B or C.

- 1 Aya is a girl. She always has amazing ideas.
a) weak b) tall c) long d) strong
- 2 We use and cell phones to go online.
a) weak b) tall c) long d) strong
- 3 have amazing eyes and they can change color.
a) weak b) tall c) long d) strong
- 4 You should safe online.
a) weak b) tall c) long d) strong
- 5 You shouldn't anyone your password.
a) tell b) tells c) told d) telling

4) Reorder the words to make correct sentences.

- 1 should to - go early - bed - .
- 2 did do Ali get information to - ?
- 3 about - doing research chameleons .
- 4 respectful - be - should - .
- 5 run - in - shouldn't - classroom - the .

March Test

اختبار شهر مارس

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

اسمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة

1. Egypt is a great
a) country b) country c) city d) village
2. Egypt is famous for its
a) language b) history c) petrol d) plant
3. More than half of Egyptians are the age of 30.
a) on b) up c) under d) of
4. Egyptians are of energy.
a) out b) empty c) inside d) full

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. In hide and seek game, the seeker tries to
the other players.
a) find b) hide c) join d) wrap
2. Some computer games need , so children can make friends.
a) apartments b) screens c) team d) animals

3 Read and complete the text with words from the box.

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من المربع.

research devices homework world have

Social media has an important role in our life. Social media helps all people around the . People can use computers and other to share their thoughts and ideas. Children can use social media to do their . Scientists can use social media to do .

4 Read the text and answer the questions.

Yesterday, we had a picnic in the park. We went to celebrate our friend Nader's birthday. We played hide and seek game. Nader was the seeker and we were the players. He closed his eyes and counted to ten. We hid and Nader tried to find us. Nader found Mona and she became the next seeker. Ali was the **winner** because he was the last one left. We enjoyed the picnic so much.

A) Choose the correct word.

- 1) We had a picnic ..
a) yesterday b) last week c) Monday d) tomorrow
- 2) The underlined word "winner" is the opposite of ..
a) poor b) rich c) player d) loser

B) Answer the following questions.

- 3) What did they celebrate at the park?
- 4) Summarize the text in one sentence.

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

1. You should (helps) your mum.
2. You (should) play in the street.
3. My father is (isn't).
4. I (go) to the club yesterday,

6 Punctuate the following sentence.

we travel on water by ship

7 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words about:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (18) كلمة عن:

Computer games

Guiding words:

(spend - children - time)

Unit 11

What can we do?

ما يمكننا ان نفعل؟



In this unit students will

- listen, read, research, and write about transportation.
- practice making sentences with **need** and **must**.
- learn about different transportation.
- read and listen to a short story.
- learn about and say words that begin with **tr** and
and diphthongs **ai**, **oa**, and **ea**.
- write about how to stop air pollution.
- research and make a leaflet about road safety.

Lesson (1) Transportation

Listen and repeat.

استمع وردّد



ship



metro



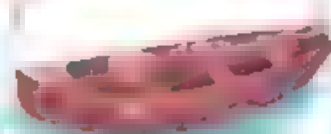
bus



plane

Transportation

وسائل المواصلات



boat



taxi

سيارة أجرة (تاكسي)



train

قطار

Help your child identify these words.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

Extra vocabulary كلمات إضافية

| | | |
|---------|---------------|---------------|
| vehicle | air | هواء - جو |
| around | city | مدينة (كبيرة) |
| road | under | تحت / أسفل |
| airport | train station | |

Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

| Present | Past | Present | Past |
|---------|----------|---------|------|
| move | moved | ride | |
| travel | traveled | come | |

Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحرف جر هامة

| | | |
|------------------|-----------------|-----------|
| go through | across the city | |
| get to school | catch a bus | |
| class quiz | far from | بعد عن |
| Have a nice day! | cool! | |
| on foot | on water | على الماء |
| on a rail | on the road | |

Did you know ?

The Ghan in Australia is the longest passenger train in the world. It is about 774 meters long. The train has up to 44 passenger carriages.

Listen and read.

استمع واقرأ

Seleem: Hi Maged! I'm doing a class quiz about public transportation.

مرحبًا يا ماجدا أنا أقوم بعمل اختبار صفي عن المواصلات العامة

Maged: Cool!

رائع

Seleem: How do you get to school?

كيف تصل إلى المدرسة؟

Maged: I come to school on foot.

أنا آتي إلى المدرسة على أقدامي

Seleem: Do you ever catch the bus or metro?

هل سبق لك أن أتيبت إلى المدرسة سيرا على الأقدام؟

Maged: Only if I'm late. I like to come on foot so I can meet my friends.

فقط إذا كنت متأخرا. أنا أحب المجيء سيرا على الأقدام حتى أستطيع مقابلة أصدقائي

Seleem: Thanks! Ramy, how do you get to school?

شكرا لك! كيف تصل إلى المدرسة يا رامي؟

Ramy: I come by car with my dad.

أنا آتي بالسيارة مع والدي

Seleem: Do you ever catch the bus or metro?

هل سبق لك أن أتيبت إلى المدرسة سيرا على الأقدام؟

Ramy: Yes, if my dad is not in town, I take the bus. I like it.

نعم، إذا كان والدي ليس في المدينة، فأنا أركب الحافلة. أنا أحبها

Seleem: Why?

لماذا؟

Ramy: We travel slowly and I can see the city.

نحن نسير ببطء ويمكنني رؤية المدينة

Seleem: Do you ever come to school on foot?

هل سبق لك أن أتيبت إلى المدرسة سيرا على الأقدام؟

Ramy: No, my house is very far from the school.

لا، إن منزلي بعيد جدًا عن المدرسة.

Seleem: Thanks! Have a nice day!

شكرا! أتمنى لك يومًا سعيدًا

Ramy: You too!

ولك أيضًا

Language

Meaning of Transport Prepositions

حروف الجر الخاصة بوسائل المواصلات

by

تأتي قبل جميع وسائل المواصلات بشرط أن لا يأتي أداة نكرة أو معرفة أو صفات ملكية بينها وبين وسيلة المواصلات.

by car by bus by taxi by ship

in

تأتي مع كلمتي بشرط وجود أداة نكرة أو معرفة أو صفات ملكية بين وسيلة المواصلات.

in a car in a taxi in my car in the taxi

on

تأتي مع كل باقي وسائل المواصلات بشرط وجود أداة نكرة أو معرفة أو صفات ملكية بين وسيلة المواصلات.

on a bus on a ship on the plane

Remember

- on foot - on rail - on water - on road

Examples:

- 1. When I travel by _____, I go through the _____.
- 2. When I travel by _____ and _____, I am on the _____.
- 3. When I travel by _____ and _____, I am on the _____.
- 4. When I travel to Luxor from Cairo by _____, I move _____ under the vehicle.
- 5. We go to the _____ to travel by _____.
- 6. _____ moves on _____ and we ride from _____.
- 7. I travel by _____ around the city.

General Activities

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة.

- When I travel by _____, I go through the air.
a) plane b) bus c) train d) car
- When I travel by ship, I'm on the _____.
a) road b) rail c) water d) air
- When I _____ by bus, I'm on the road.
a) play b) sing c) travel d) run
- I travel to Luxor from Cairo _____ train.
a) at b) on c) in d) by

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

- We travel _____ plane through the air.
a) in b) on c) by d) at
- A _____ moves on a rail.
a) ship b) train c) plane d) bus
- We travel on _____ by ship or boat.
a) air b) rails c) roads d) water
- I go to school _____ foot.
a) in b) at c) on d) by
- Cars and buses are means of _____.
a) sports b) transportation c) pollution d) colors
- I go to the zoo _____ the bus.
a) by b) on c) in d) at
- I like to go to school _____ bike.
a) by b) on c) in d) of
- Who comes to school _____ the car?
a) on b) by c) in d) at

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

اقرأ واكمل النص بكلمات من المربع.

transportation - by - bus - travel - in

- I'm Malak. I'm nine years old. I go to school by 1) _____.
- It's my favorite 2) _____. Sometimes I go with my father
- 3) _____ car. My family and I 4) _____ by train on holidays.

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

4

Read the text and answer the questions.

اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة

Yesterday my family and I went to Aswan to visit our uncle. We went by train. We rode a train from a train station. We moved a rail under the vehicle. My favorite transportation is a train. I loved traveling by train. It's clean and fast. My brother likes going through the air more. He likes traveling by plane. My father's favorite is the bus.

A) Choose the correct word.

- 1) Yesterday, we went to
a) Alexandria b) Cairo c) Giza d) Aswan
- 2) We went by
a) bus b) train c) plane d) car

B) Answer the following questions.

- 3) What is your favorite transportation?
- 4) When did you go to visit your uncle?

5

Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

اقرأ واكتب الشكل الصحيح للكلمات التي بين الأقواس

- 1 We travel (in) taxi around the city.
- 2 I go to school (ny) foot.
- 3 I go to my office (on) the car.
- 4 They go to school (on) bus.

6

Punctuate the following sentence. مع علامات الترقيم لتحملها اللاحقة

who likes traveling by bus

7

Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words about:

كيف تفرد الستايف من (18) كلمة عن

Transportation

Guiding words:

(plane - air - rail)

Lesson (2 / A)

Road Safety

Vocabulary المفردات

| | | | |
|-----------|-----------|-------------|--------------------|
| sign | لافتة | road safety | السلامة على الطريق |
| important | هام / مهم | helmet | خوذة |
| seat belt | حزام | necessary | ضروري |
| safely | بأمان | safe | امن |
| right | يمين | green light | إشارة خضراء |
| left | يسار | danger | خطر |

Conjugation of verbs

| Present | Past | Present | Past |
|---------|---------|---------|--------|
| need | needed | wait | waited |
| cross | crossed | ride | rode |
| turn | turned | swim | swam |
| park | parked | show | showed |

Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

| | | | |
|-------------|------------|------------------|--------------|
| go straight | مباشرة | in danger | في خطر |
| turn right | يمين | in the middle of | في منتصف |
| stop here | توقف هنا | divide into | تقسيم |
| wait for | انتظر | safe roads | طرق آمنة |
| ride a bike | ركوب دراجة | cross the road | تقاطع الطريق |

Road safety

السلامة على الطريق

You need a **green light** to cross the road.

نحتاج الى إشارة حمراء كي نعبور الطريق



You need to look **left and right**.

نحتاج ان ننظر يسار و يمين



You need a **helmet** on your bike.

نحتاج الى خوذة واسد بركب بدراجة



You need a **seat belt** in your car.

نحتاج الى حزام امان في سيارتنا



Road signs

لافتات الطريق



You can go **straight** and turn right.

يمكنك السير للأمام مباشرة والانعاج يمينا



Stop here and **wait** for a green light.

توقف ههنا وانتظر إشارة المرور الخضراء



You can't **swim** here.

لا يمكنك السباحة ههنا



There are sometimes **camels** on the road.

يوجد حيوان جمال على الطريق

Lesson 2

need

Usage

We use "need" when something is important or necessary.

نستخدم (need) عندما نحتاج إلى شيء ما.

Subject + need + noun

- You need a helmet on your bike.

You need safe roads.

Subject + need to + Inf.

e.g. You need to look left and right.

1

Choose the correct word from a, b, c or d. (اختر الكلمة الصحيحة من a, b, c أو d)

- You need a seat belt in your car.
a) needing need to need needs
- You need to wear a helmet.
a) wears wearing wear wore
- You need to look left and right when you cross the road.
a) read need drink play
- You need a green light to cross the road.
a) must can need should
- You need to look left and right.
a) looked to look looking look
- We need safe roads.
a) need to needs needing need

2

Read and write the correct word from a, b, c or d. (اقرأ واكتب الكلمة الصحيحة من a, b, c أو d)

اقرأ واكتب الكلمة الصحيحة من a, b, c أو d.

- You need to wear a helmet on your bike.
- You need to look left and right.
- You need to wait for the green light.
- We need healthy food.
- We need to be careful on the road.

Lesson (2 / B)

Be careful on the roads

Vocabulary المفردات

| | | | |
|-----------|----------------------|-------------|----------------|
| young man | شاب | wrong | خطأ |
| motorbike | دراجة نارية (بحارية) | right | صواب - صح |
| crosswalk | ممر المشاة | hospital | مستشفى |
| shocked | مصدوم | interesting | شيق |
| leg | ساق | boring | ممل |
| ambulance | سيارة إسعاف | kind | طيب / عذوف |
| fast | سريع | crash | اصطدام / تصادم |

Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs

فعل منتظم

Present

Past

| | | |
|--------|------|----------|
| work | عمل | worked |
| stop | توقف | stopped |
| call | اتصل | called |
| learn | تعلم | learned |
| follow | تبع | followed |
| want | يريد | wanted |

Irregular verbs

فعل غير منتظم

Present

Past

| | | |
|------------|-------|------------|
| drive | قاد | drove |
| hurt | ألم | hurt |
| feel | يشعر | felt |
| understand | يفهم | understood |
| wear | ارتدى | wore |
| fall | يسقط | fell |

Important expressions and prepositions

عبارات - وحروف جر مهمة

| | | | |
|------------------|------------------|---------------|---------------|
| be careful | كن حريصاً / احذر | fall over | يسقط |
| in a hurry | في عجلة | feel bad | يشعر بالسوء |
| too fast | سريع جداً | take notes | تدوين ملاحظات |
| cross the street | تقاطع الشارع | call for | يستدعي |
| by motorbike | بالدراجة | drive through | تدور |

Listen and read.

استمع واقرا

Be careful on the road!



Mazen and Dalida are brother and sister. They love their school. Their teachers are very kind.

Hani is a **young man**. He works in the city and he goes to work by **motorbike**. Today, he was **in a hurry**.

Mazen and Dalida walk to school together. They cross the road at the **crosswalk**.

اليوم، هم مشوا مع بعضهم بعضا الى المدرسة. كانوا يمشون في الطريق.

الطريق عند معبر المشاة.

Today, they walked to the crosswalk and waited for the cars to stop. Then they walked into the road. Mazen walked to the middle of the crosswalk. Then Hani drove through the crosswalk. He didn't stop because he was going too fast.

Mazen **fell over**. He was very **hurt**. Dalida was scared, but she wanted to **help** her brother.

كانت داليدا خائفة ولكنها أرادت أن تساعد أخاها.

Hani stopped to help. Mazen wanted to go to school, but he hurt his leg. Hani called for an **ambulance**.

Mazen is now at the hospital with his mom and sister. Hani is feeling very bad.

في المستشفى مع والدته وأخته، يشعر هاني بالسوء.

General Activities

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة

- You need a helmet on your
a) car b) plane c) bike d) bus
- You need a in your car.
a) seat belt b) helmet c) lifejacket d) hat
- You need to left and right.
a) take b) bake c) look d) eat
- You need a light to cross the road.
a) pink b) red c) yellow d) green

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة

- I was scared when I saw the
a) crash b) crosswalk c) helmet d) bike
- Mazen wanted to go to school, but he his leg.
a) took b) hurt c) went d) helped
- Ahmed was a hurry.
a) on b) under c) in d) at
- You can go , then turn right.
a) street b) strang c) straight d) store
- He goes to work motorbike.
a) at b) on c) in d) by
- He couldn't stop because he was going too
a) fast b) tall c) slow d) happy

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من المربع

play - need - came.s - he met - s - t

It is important to be safe on the road. You ¹⁾ to
look at the road signs. There are sometimes ²⁾ on
the road. You need to look left and right. You can't ³⁾ on
the road. We need a ⁴⁾ in our cars.



4 Read the text and answer the questions. اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة

Mazen and Dalida are brother and sister. Hani is a young man. He works in the city and he goes to work by motorbike. Today, he was in a hurry. Mazen and Dalida walk to school together. They cross the road at the crosswalk. Today, Mazen walked to the middle of the crosswalk. Then Hani drove through the crosswalk. He didn't stop because he was going too fast. Mazen fell over. He was very shocked.

A) Choose the correct word.

- 1) Hani goes to work by
 a) car b) ship c) bus d) motorbike
- 2) When Mazen fell over, he was
 a) delighted b) shocked c) happy d) hungry

B) Answer the following questions.

- 3) Why didn't Hani stop?
- 4) Where does Hani work?

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets. اقرأ واكتب الشكل الصحيح للكلمات التي بين القوسين

1. We need to (LOOKS) left and right when we cross the road.
2. We (need to) safe roads.
3. We need (in) stop pollution.
4. I'm ill. I need to (goes) to hospital.

6 Punctuate the following sentence. امسح علامات الترقيم للحملة الآتية

you can't park your car here

7 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words about: اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (18) كلمة عن:

Road safety

Guiding words:

(helmet - seat belt - green light)

- Language

- Pronunciation

When we give strong advice, we use:

We must look for cars before we cross the road.

e.g. You mustn't run on the road.

making Notes

When we take notes, we don't write complete sentences. We write important words.

Notes

cross - crosswalk
don't run - roads
wear seat belt in car

Advice

You must cross at the crosswalk.
You mustn't run on the roads.
You must wear seat belt in the car.

1

We must

at the crosswalk.

We

run on the roads.

can

mustn't

must

d) should

We must

the road signs.

We must

for cars before we cross the road.

2

between brackets.

امراً واكتب الشكل الصحيح للكلمات التي بين الأقواس

You mustn't

on the road.

You must

healthy food

You

talk in the library.

They

wash their hands before eating.

Pronunciation

cr /kr/



ash



osswalk



owd

tr /tr/



truck

شاحنة



train

قطار

Diphthongs / الإدغام الأصوات المتحركة الطويلة

Two vowel sounds pronounced together, making one long vowel sound.

كل متحركين مع بعضهما صوت ممدود واحد.

ai /eɪ/

oa /oʊ/

ea /i:/

rain

مطر

float

طفو

clean

نظيف

snail

حلزون

boat

سكب / قارب

dream

حلم

train

قطار

coat

معطف

sea

بحر

General Activities

1 Look and write the missing sound.

نظروا واكتبوا الصوت المفقود



uck



sn _ l



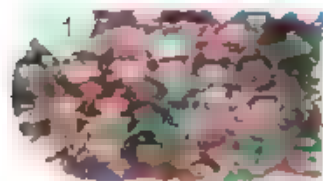
c _ t



ash

2 Look, circle, and write.

انظروا وضع دائرة واكتبوا



_ _ owd

tr

cr

2



cl _ _ n

ai

ea



r _ _ n

ai

ea

3 Read and circle the odd sound out.

اقرأ ثم دوائر الصوت المختلف

1 crowd

crash

crosswalk

train

2 dream

sea

float

clean

3. rain

coat

boat

float

4 Read and sort.

اقرأ ورتب

crash - dream - sea - snail - crosswalk truck - train rain

tr

cr

ea

ai

Lesson (3 / B)

Air Pollution

Vocabulary المفردات

| | | | | | |
|----------------|-----------------|------------|---------------|---------|--------|
| air pollution | تلوث هواء | mask | قناع | asthma | الربو |
| dangerous | خطير | chemicals | مواد كيميائية | fires | نيران |
| electric buses | حافلات كهربائية | dirty | مسخ | heating | تدفئة |
| photosynthesis | تخليق ضوئي | rice straw | قش الأرز | crops | محاصيل |
| polluted air | هواء ملوث | sick | مريض | shade | ظل |
| solar power | طاقة شمسية | idea | فكرة | clean | نظيف |

Conjugation of verbs صيغ الافعال

Regular verbs افعال منتظمة

| Present | Past |
|---------|----------|
| breathe | breathed |
| cough | coughed |
| cycle | cycled |
| cover | covered |
| allow | allowed |
| plant | planted |

Irregular verbs افعال غير منتظمة

| Present | Past |
|---------|--------|
| put | put |
| make | made |
| feel | felt |
| take | took |
| drive | drove |
| buy | bought |

Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

| | | | |
|---------------------|-------------------|-------------|-------------|
| put into | ضع في | parts of | أجزاء |
| drive to | يوصل بالسيارة إلى | go into | يدخل في |
| dangerous for | خطير على | burn straw | حرق قش |
| worried about | شديد قلق | have asthma | تصاب بالربو |
| look pretty | يبدو الجميلة | take a bus | يستقل حافلة |

Listen and read.

استمع واقرأ

Cities have many cars. Cars make
 . They put into the air. We
 can't always see the chemicals, but they are
 dangerous.

Air pollution is very dangerous for us. When we
 breathe the , we cough and feel sick.

Does this happen to you in your city or town? Is the air dirty or clean?
 Some cities are trying to stop the air pollution.



In London, England, parents do not drive children to
 school. The children walk or to school. Cars do not
 go near the school.

السيارات لا تقترب من المدرسة



In Shenzhen, China, they have . These
 buses do not make air pollution.

في شينتشن، الصين لديهم حافلات كهربائية. هذه الحافلات لا تسبب تلوث الهواء



In Gharbia, Egypt, farmers wanted to have cleaner air. To do
 that, they stopped burning . They used the straw to
 make food for their animals and their crops.

طعام لحيواناتهم وتغذية محاصيلهم.



In Paris, France, cars can't go into some parts of the city.
 In these places, you can only walk or take a bus.



In Copenhagen, Denmark, there are more bikes than
 people and large parts of the city don't cars.
 These are all good ideas to stop air pollution in cities.

هذه كلها أفكار جيدة لمنع تلوث الهواء في المدن.

Which idea do you like best?

Listen and read.

استمع وقرأ.

A : Today I am talking to Doctor Helen Walker about air pollution. Helen, why are you worried about this subject?

B : Because one of my sons has very bad asthma and I think it is because of the dirty air in our city. I wanted to say something to help him and other children.

A : What can we do to help make the air cleaner?

ما يمكننا أن نفعل لجعل الهواء أنظف؟

B : I have some ideas. First of all, we need to cut the amount we use our cars. We can try to buy from stores near our house. Children can try to walk to school.

يمكن للأطفال محاولة المشي إلى المدرسة.

A : But sometimes children live a long way from school.

بعض أحياناً يعيش الأطفال على بعد مسافة طويلة من المدرسة.

B : Then they could go by bike or maybe take the bus.

يُمكنهم الذهاب بالدراجة أو ركوب الحافلة.

A : Good idea, many schools have buses. What are your other ideas?

B : Try not to have open fires at home. If it's cold, use the heating. And use renewable energy if you can, like solar power - renewable energy keeps the air clean!

إذا استطعت، مثل الطاقة الشمسية - الطاقة المتجددة تحافظ على نظافة الهواء.

A : Oh, that's helpful. What about more trees?

B : Yes, that's an excellent idea. We need to plant trees. Trees clean the air because they use the chemicals for their growth through photosynthesis. They also make cities look pretty and give us shade on a hot day!

General Activities

1

Put the correct answer from a, b, c or d

الاجابة الصحيحة من ا، ب، ج، د

1. Farmers wanted to have _____ air.
 a) cleaner b) dirtier c) bad d) polluted
2. They stopped burning _____ straw.
 a) corn b) rice c) bean d) wheat
3. They used the straw to make _____.
 a) drinks b) gas c) food d) juice
4. They used the straw to cover their _____.
 a) animals b) fish c) water d) crops

2

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d

اختر الاجابة الصحيحة من ا، ب، ج، د

1. Cars make air _____.
 a) pollute b) pollution c) polluting d) pollutes
2. The boy is wearing a _____ to protect himself from pollution.
 a) hat b) mask c) skirt d) cap
3. Cars put _____ into the air.
 a) fruits b) vegetables c) oxygen d) chemicals
4. Chemicals are _____ for us.
 a) safe b) kind c) dangerous d) good
5. We _____ when we breathe polluted air.
 a) sleep b) cough c) laugh d) cry
6. The children in England _____ to school.
 a) swim b) try c) cycle d) fly
7. _____ buses don't make air pollution.
 a) Electricity b) Flying c) Petrol d) Electric
8. Farmers stopped _____ rice straw.
 a) burning b) eating c) recycling d) growing
9. Farmers used the straw to _____ their crops.
 a) cover b) uncover c) eat d) sell
10. You can only walk or _____ a bus in this city.
 a) bake b) make c) take d) do

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

اقرأ واكمل النص بكلمات من المربع

chemical - air pollution - dangerous - run

- Cities have many cars. Cars make 1) . They put 2) into the air. We can't always see the chemicals, but they are 3) . Air pollution is very dangerous for us. When we breathe the polluted air, we 4) and feel sick.

4 Read the text and answer the questions.

اقرأ النص، واذكر عن النص

Cities have many cars. Cars make air pollution. They put chemicals into the air. We can't always see the chemicals, but they are dangerous. Some cities are trying to stop air pollution. In London, England, parents don't drive children to school. The children walk or cycle to school. In Shenzhen, China, they have electric buses. These buses don't make air pollution.

A) Choose the correct word.

- 1) Cars put chemicals into the .
a) air b) water c) land d) rivers
- 2) In China, they have electric .
a) planes b) ships c) buses d) bikes

B) Answer the following questions.

- 3) What is the general idea of the text?
4) How do children in England go to school?

5 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words about.

اكتب فقرة من ثمانية عشر (18) كلمة عن

Guiding words:

Air pollution

(cars - chemicals - dangerous)

Lessons (4 & 5)

Writing & Project

Vocabulary المفردات

energy-saving lightbulbs
public transportation
car-sharing
car-free roads
cycle

مشاركة السيارات

طريق خالية من السيارات

دراجة الدراجة

Extra vocabulary كلمات إضافية

classmates
road signs
factories
balcony
leaflet

زملاء الفصل

لافتات الطريق

شرفة / طوكوية

نشرة / منشور

fresh air

traffic

apartment

report

gas

هواء نقي

حركة المرور

شقة

تقرير

غاز

Conjugation of verbs

| Present | Past | Present | Past |
|----------|-----------|---------|--------|
| share | shared | travel | travel |
| decide | decided | cross | cross |
| improve | improved | hear | heard |
| reduce | reduced | put in | put in |
| increase | increased | burn | burnt |

Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

at the side of

talk about

decide to

do research

على جانب

go with

information about

in the same car

on the balcony

بجانب

معلومات

في نفس السيارة

على الشرفة

Listen and read.

استمع واقرأ

Youssef's report

Last week I heard Dr Helen Walker talking about air pollution. I liked her **ideas** and I did some **research**. I talked to my family about what we can do:

We can have **energy-saving lightbulbs** in our **apartment**

We can use buses and trains more.

We can share a car with a friend sometimes.

We can walk and not always go by car.

We can have many plants on our **balcony**.

- يمكن أن يكون للجد مصباح كهربائي موفرة للطاقة في شقة
- يمكننا استخدام الحافلات والقطارات أكثر
- يمكننا مشاركة السيارة مع صديق في بعض الأحيان
- يمكننا المشي ولا نذهب دائماً بالسيارة
- يمكن أن يكون لدينا العديد من النباتات في شرفتنا

We decided to change some things as a family. Dad now goes to work with his friend in the same car. Mom takes the bus to work. She doesn't drive. I now go to school by bike. My sister, Noura, walks to her school.

We have more plants in the living room and on the balcony.

When our lightbulbs stop working, we can put in energy-saving lightbulbs. I'm **excited**!

Youssef

Listen and read.

استمع واقرأ.

Good ideas to reduce air pollution



Don't burn rice straw.

لا تحرق قش الأرز.

Have cleaner gas in cars.

ضع غاز أكثر نظافة في سيارتك.



Increase public transportation.

قم بزيادة استخدام وسائل النقل العام.

Have some car-free roads.

تخصيص بعض الطرق الحدية من السيارات.



Travel on foot or by bike.

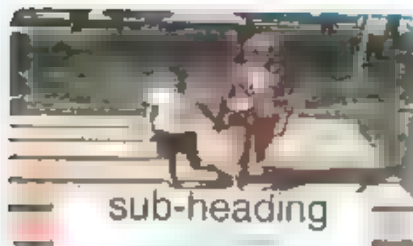


Project Road safety leaflet

ROAD SAFETY

main heading

عنوان رئيسي



sub-heading



photo

paragraph

Be safe on the road

Use the crosswalks.

Walk slowly - don't run.

Watch the traffic

Listen for cars.

Don't cross from
behind a car.

Read the road signs

Read the road signs.

They give you
important information
about the road.

General Activities

1 Choose a correct answer from a, b, c or d. اختر إجابة صحيحة

1. Don't burn _____ straw to keep the village clean.
a) tomato b) rice c) carrot d) potatoes
2. Increase _____ transportation to have clean air.
a) individual b) special c) private d) public
3. Have cleaner _____ in cars.
a) gas b) water c) milk d) juice
4. Have some _____ free roads to reduce air pollution.
a) car b) train c) plane d) boat
5. Travel _____ foot or by bike to your work.
a) by b) in c) on d) at
6. We should have more plants on our _____.
a) car b) bus c) balcony d) bike
7. He goes to work with his friend _____ the same car.
a) at b) on c) in d) by
8. My dad likes _____ - sharing.
a) boat b) train c) car d) plane

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

اقرأ واكمل النص بكلمات من المربع

1 - 2 - 3 - 4 - 5 - 6 - 7 - 8 - 9 - 10 - 11 - 12 - 13 - 14 - 15 - 16 - 17 - 18 - 19 - 20

We decided to change some things to reduce air pollution. We have more 1) _____ in the living room and on the 2) _____. When our 3) _____ stop working, we can put in energy-saving lightbulbs. I'm 4) _____.

3

Read the text and answer the questions.

اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة

We can do a lot of things to reduce air pollution. We can have energy - saving lightbulbs in our apartment. We can use buses and trains more. We can share a car with a friend sometimes. We can walk and not always go by car. We can have many plants on our balcony. We also shouldn't burn rice straw. We should have cleaner gas in cars.

A) Choose the correct word.

- 1) We can use _____ and train more.
 a) planes b) buses c) cars d) taxies
- 2) We can _____ a car with a friend.
 a) buy b) reduce c) share d) burn

B) Answer the following questions.

- 3) Should we burn rice straw? Why?
- 4) What can we do in our apartment to reduce air pollution?

4

Punctuate the following sentence.

صحح علامات الترقيم في الجملة التالية

how does mom go to work

5

Write a paragraph of **EIGHTEEN (18)** words about.

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (18) كلمة عن:

How to be safe on the road

Guiding words:

(crosswalks - slowly - don't run)

Review on Unit (11)

Vocabulary

| | | |
|-------|----------------|---------------|
| metro | transportation | shocked |
| bus | ambulance | fell over |
| plane | طائرة rail | سكة حديد left |
| boat | in a hurry | right |
| train | chemicals | by bus |
| taxi | on foot | through air |

Phonics

cr



crash



crowd



crosswalk

tr



train



truck

Language

- You need a seat belt in your car.
- You need to look left and right.



You can go straight and turn right.



You can't swim here.



You must wait for the green light.

Writing Corner



Write a paragraph of

100 words

(100 كلمة)

اكتب فقرة إنسانيه من (100) كلمة

"My favorite transportation"

There are many kinds of transportation. Trains move on a rail. We can see ships and boats on the water. We can see cars, buses and taxis on our roads.

"My favorite transportation"

My name is Ziad. I'm in primary four. My favorite transportation is a ship. I love traveling on water. I enjoy seeing the water and the wonderful trees around it. I also like being on a boat.

"Road safety"

We should be careful on the road to be safe. We must listen for cars before we cross the road. We must wear seat belts in cars. We need a helmet on our bikes. We mustn't run at the crosswalk.

"Air pollution"

Air pollution is very dangerous. Cities have many cars. They put chemicals into the air. Some cities are trying to stop the air pollution. In England, children walk or cycle to school.

Dictation on Unit (11)

القطر

| Word | Meaning |
|------|-------------------|
| | أتوبيس / حافلة |
| | قطر |
| | سيرًا على الأقدام |
| | سفينة |
| | على الماء |

| Word | Meaning |
|------|---------|
| | منرو |
| | قارب |
| | تاكسي |
| | طائرة |
| | سيارة |

السلامة

| Word | Meaning |
|------|----------------|
| | خوذة |
| | أمان |
| | شباب |
| | اصطدام - تصادم |
| | معبر المشاة |
| | لافتة |
| | كن حذرًا |

| Word | Meaning |
|------|------------------|
| | حرام أمان |
| | سلامة على الطريق |
| | اتجه يمينًا |
| | رحام |
| | متعجل |
| | الصوت الأخضر |
| | سيارة إسعاف |

البيئة

| Word | Meaning |
|------|---------|
| | شاحنة |
| | مطر |
| | حلزون |

| Word | Meaning |
|------|---------------|
| | مواد كيميائية |
| | مريض |
| | كمامة - قناع |

السيارات

| Word | Meaning |
|------|----------------|
| | مشاركة السيارة |
| | يقلل |
| | لافتات الطريق |

| Word | Meaning |
|------|---------------------|
| | مصابيح موفرة للطاقة |
| | يُحسن |
| | هواء نقي |

Help your child dictate these words.

ساعد طفلك في إملاء هذه الكلمات.

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

اسمع وضع دائرة حول الاجابة الصحيحة

1. Mazen and Dalida are brother and

- a) sister b) brother c) father d) mother

2. They love their

- a) teacher b) friends c) parents d) school

3. Their teachers are very

- a) kind b) strict c) angry d) sad

4. Their father is a

- a) doctor b) teacher c) engineer d) nurse

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. When I travel by _____, I go through the air.

- a) train b) plane c) car d) bus

2. You need a _____ in your car.

- a) driver b) passenger c) ticket d) map

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

امرا واكمل النص بكلمات من المربع

by - same - near - takes - far

We decided to change some things as a family. Dad now goes to work with his friend in the _____ car. Mom _____ the bus to work. I now go to school _____ bike. My sister, Noura, walks to school because her school is _____.

4 Read the text and answer the question.

افرا النص واجب عن الاسئلة

Mazen and her sister Dalia walk to school together. They cross the road at the crosswalk. Yesterday, they walked to the crosswalk and waited for the cars to stop. Then they walked into the road.

Activities

Today, Mazen walked to the middle of the crosswalk. Then Hani drove his motorbike through the crosswalk. He didn't stop because he was going too **fast**. Mazen fell over. He was very shocked. Dalia was scared, but she wanted to help her brother.

A) Choose the correct word.

1) Dalia is Mazen's

a) brother

b) sister

c) mother

d) father

2) The word "fast" means

a) sorry

b) happy

c) carefully

d) quick

B) Answer the following questions.

3) How do Mazen and Dalia go to school?

4) Why didn't Hani stop?

5) Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

سأرا واكتب الشكل الصحيح للكلمات التي بين الأقواس

1. We need to () a helmet on our bikes.

2. You () run on roads.

3. Farmers must () burning rice straw.

4. We () a seat belt in our cars.

6) Punctuate the following sentence.

المسألة 6

mazen and Dalia go to school on foot

7) Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words about:

المسألة 7
18 كلمة

Reducing air pollution

Guiding words:

(burn straw - bike - share car)

1) Listen and choose the correct answer.

- My favorite transportation is a .
a) ship b) car c) plane d) bike
- I love traveling on .
a) air b) water c) foot d) rail
- I go to school on
a) bike b) foot c) bus d) taxi

2) Read and complete the dialogue with:

helmet - safe - school - bike

- Ali : How do you go to 1) _____ ?
Ahmed : I go by 2) _____ .
Ali : What do you need to be 3) _____ ?
Ahmed : I need a 4) _____ on my bike.

3) Choose the correct answer from a , b, c or d.

- We go to the _____ to travel by plane.
a) station b) airport c) stadium d) school
- Hani called for a/an _____ because Mazen hurt his leg.
a) car b) bus c) ambulance d) train
- Which is your favorite _____ ? A ship.
a) game b) transportation c) subject d) game
- He goes to work _____ a bus.
a) by b) in c) on d) at
- You need to _____ left and right.
a) look b) looks c) looked d) looking

4) Reorder the words to make correct sentences.

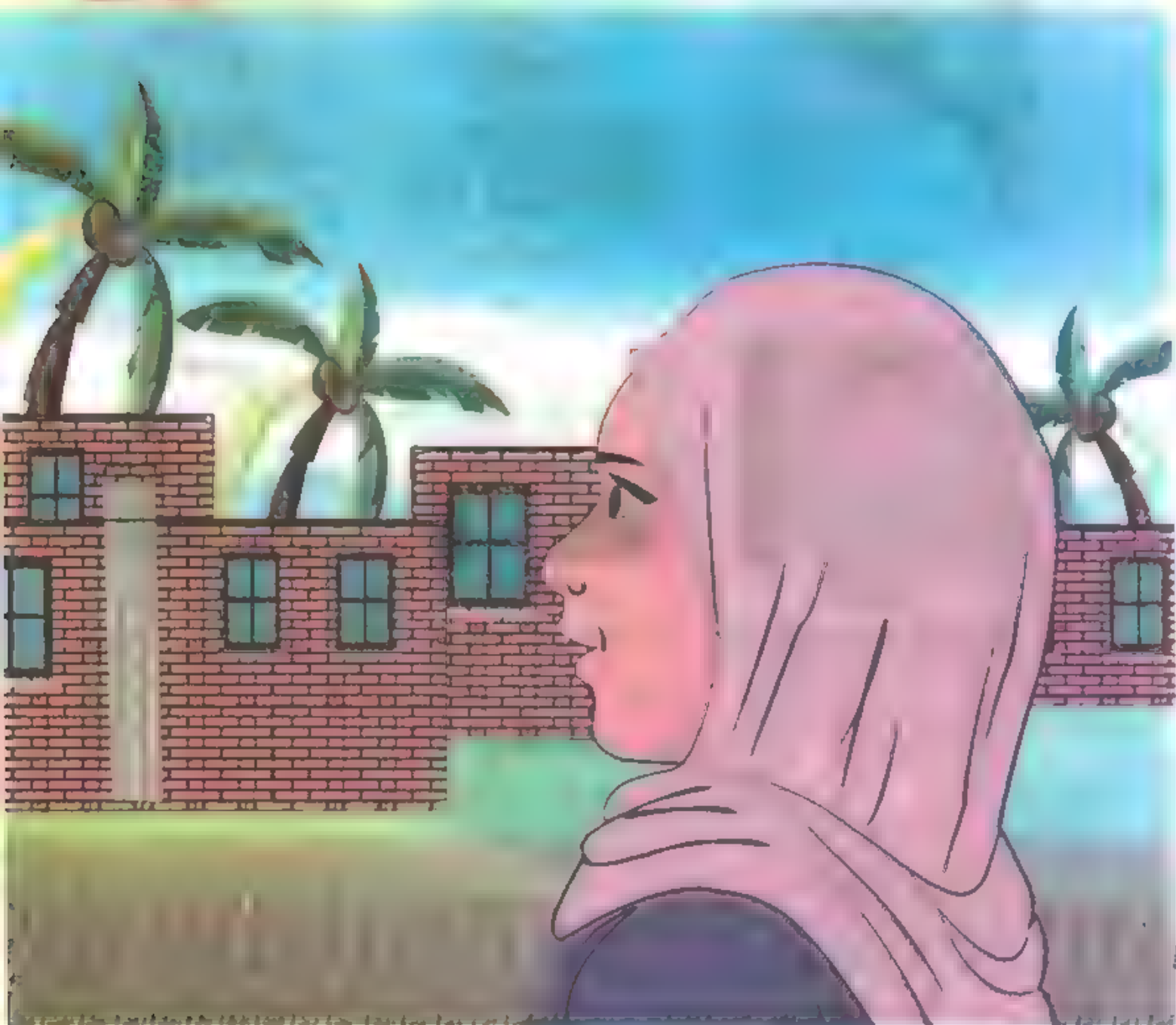
- the - at - Cross - the - cross - walk road .
- go - school - They - to - foot - on - .
- run - mustn't - the - on - You - road - .
- is - pollution - Air - dangerous very .
- travel - on - How we can - water - ?

Unit
12

FICTION READER

DALIA SAVES THE VILLAGE!

داليا تنقذ القرية!



BY NICOLA GARDNER

**Unit
(12)**

**FICTION READER
DALIA SAVES THE VILLAGE!**

The Characters



Dalia



Grandpa



Grandma



**Tarek
(Dalia's brother)**



**Gameela
(Dalia's mom)**



**Waleed
(Dalia's dad)**

~~~~~  
**The setting**

**Places**

- A village in Egypt
- Dalia's house
- Grandparents' house

**Time**

- morning
- evening

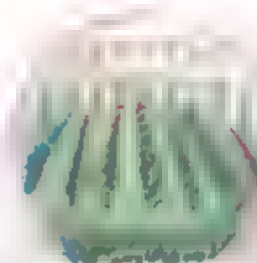
# PICTURE DICTIONARY

Listen and repeat.

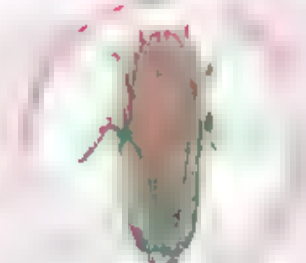
استمع وردّد



wheat  
قمح



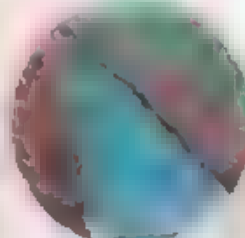
crop  
محصول



maize  
ذرة



irrigation  
الري



irrigation canal  
قناة الري



wheat flour  
دقيق قمح

## Beginning

## Middle

## End



- ♦ Dalia does research about crops in Egypt.
- ♦ The crops are not growing well in the village.
- ♦ Dalia contacts everyone in the village on social media.



- ♦ The irrigation canal is blocked with trash.
- ♦ The villagers start to clear the trash.
- ♦ Now the water isn't polluted.



- ♦ The water comes back and the crops grow again.
- ♦ Some villagers start to grow wheat.
- ♦ The villagers make bread and biscuits to sell them

## Beginning

## The Problem

## المشكلة



Dalia lives in a village in Egypt. One evening she is doing her homework on her computer. She is doing research about crops in Egypt, like wheat, maize, and rice, and it is very interesting.

Wheat is an important crop in our country and we use it to make bread. Dalia looks at the pictures of delicious Egyptian bread. Dalia likes baladi bread best. Which is your favorite?

[illegible][illegible]

مستند داتا إلى صفة اجمع المصغر بدو في نفس جم مفعلة في اجمع بدو في صفة جم أ' لمتعدد



## DALIA SAVES THE VILLAGE!



Dalia's mom, Gameela, is speaking to Dalia's dad, Waleed, who looks sad. 'The crops are not growing well in the village. There is a problem with the water and we have no **irrigation**,' says Gameela to Dalia. 'We need to help everyone in the village with their crops.' Dalia's brother, Tarek, says, 'But what can we do?' Dalia says, 'It's very simple. Let's call everyone in the village on **social media**. We need to help our village.'

نساعد الجميع في القرية فيما يخص محاصيلهم". يقول

حياء في القرية. هناك مشكلة في المياه ولا يوجد ري

يقول داليا: "دعنا نساعد الجميع في القرية فيما يخص محاصيلهم".

من الاجتماع. نحن نحتاج أن نساعد القرية





Dalia's family gets water from the Nile. But the irrigation canal is not working. She tells everyone in the village about this problem on social media, then meets everyone in the **main square**. A lot of villagers say they can help.

في قرية داليا، كان الناس يحصلون على المياه من النيل. لكن القناة الريّة لم تكن تعمل. داليا أخبرتهم عن هذه المشكلة على وسائل التواصل الاجتماعي، ثمّ التقى الجميع في **الساحة الرئيسيّة**. كثير من القرّية يقولون إنّهم يستطيعون المساعدة.

# Activities

## 1 Read and tick (✓) or (✗).

- 1) Dalia lives in a village in Egypt.
- 2) Dalia is a teacher.
- 3) Dalia is doing research about crops.
- 4) Dalia doesn't like baladi bread.
- 5) The crops are not growing well in the village.
- 6) Dalia doesn't want to help her village.
- 7) The irrigation canal is not working.
- 8) Villagers don't want to help.



## 2 Complete the sentences with the words in the box.

water - crops - village - social media - baladi

- 1) Dalia lives in a \_\_\_\_\_ in Egypt.
- 2) Dalia is doing research about \_\_\_\_\_ in Egypt.
- 3) Dalia likes \_\_\_\_\_ bread best.
- 4) There is a problem with the \_\_\_\_\_ in the village.
- 5) Dalia calls everyone in the village on \_\_\_\_\_.

## 3 Answer the following questions.

- 1) Where does Dalia live? \_\_\_\_\_
- 2) What does Dalia like best? \_\_\_\_\_
- 3) Why are not the crops growing well in the village? \_\_\_\_\_
- 4) How does Dalia call everyone in the village? \_\_\_\_\_

## Middle

## The Villagers meet

أهل القرية يلتقون



The next day everyone gets together in the center of the village. Some people come on foot, and some by bike. Some people come by boat or by car from another village to help.

Everyone is very excited to help with the problem. They meet at Dalia's grandparents' house. Dalia's grandma gives them tea and cookies.

وفي اليوم التالي يجتمع الجميع في وسط القرية. تأتي بعض الناس مشياً على الأقدام، والبعض الآخر بالسيارة أو بالقارب من قرية أخرى للمساعدة.

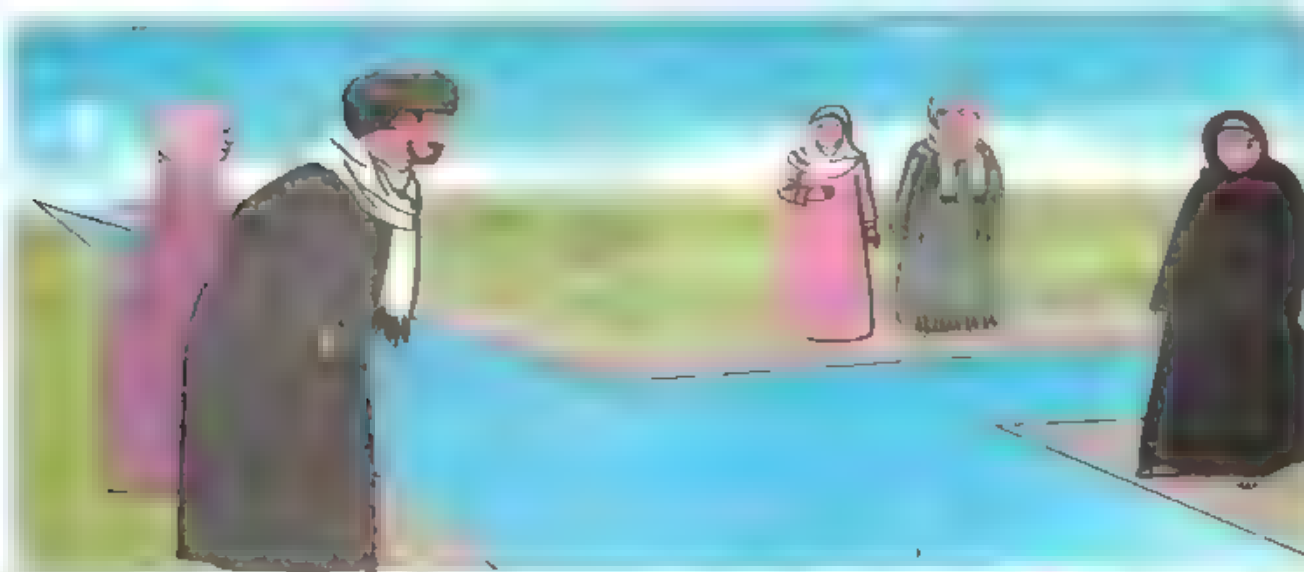
وبعض الأشخاص بالقرب أو بالسيارة.

يتقابلون في منزل أجداد داليا، ويقدم جده داليا لهم الشاي والبسكويت.

## DALIA SAVES THE VILLAGE!



Dalia and her family go to see the problem. The irrigation canal that brings the water is **blocked** with trash – plastic bottles and **household** things. There are also some plants in the water. Tarek says, 'We need to start work and clean the water.' The water is not very deep and they start to clear the trash. They fill 20 trash bags with the trash. Now the water isn't polluted.



Help your child read and follow the events of the story.

ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ ويتابع أحداث القصة.





The water comes back to the village and the crops grow again. Everyone is very happy. They can grow food on their land and they can sell their fruit and vegetables to buy other things. Their lives become easier. But some of the crops are not very good.

المياه تعود إلى القرية وتزرع المحاصيل مرة أخرى. الجميع سعيد جداً. يمكنهم زراعة الطعام في أراضيهم ويمكنهم بيع الفواكه والخضروات لشراء أشياء أخرى. حياتهم تصبح أسهل. لكن بعض المحاصيل ليست جيدة جداً.

# Activities

## 1 Read and tick (✓) or (×) .

- 1) The villagers are excited to help with the problem. ☐
- 2) The villagers meet at Dalia's house. ☐
- 3) Dalia's grandma gives the villagers coffee. ☐
- 4) The irrigation canal is blocked with trash. ☐
- 5) They fill 20 trash bags with the trash. ☐
- 6) The water doesn't come back to the village. ☐

## 2 Complete the sentences with the words in the box.

tea - cookies - excited - villagers - crops - trash -  
blocked - plants

- 1) Everyone is very \_\_\_\_\_ to help with the problem.
- 2) The \_\_\_\_\_ meet at Dalia's grandparents' house.
- 3) Dalia's grandma gives them \_\_\_\_\_ and \_\_\_\_\_.
- 4) The irrigation canal is \_\_\_\_\_ with trash.
- 5) There are some \_\_\_\_\_ in the water.
- 6) The villagers fill 20 \_\_\_\_\_ bags with the trash.
- 7) The water comes back to the village and the \_\_\_\_\_ grow again.

## 3 Answer the following questions.

- 1) Where do the villagers meet? \_\_\_\_\_
- 2) Who gives the villagers tea and cookies? \_\_\_\_\_
- 3) Why is the irrigation canal blocked? \_\_\_\_\_
- 4) What do they do with the irrigation canal? \_\_\_\_\_

End

## Dalia's Plan

خطة داليا.



Dalia has a **plan**. She thinks the villagers can produce more food. She says they should try wheat — she tells them about her research. She says wheat grows very well in Egypt and is great for making delicious bread and cakes.

Some villagers like the idea — they start to grow wheat in some of their fields.

وكانت داليا قد فكرت في خطة جديدة. إنها تعتقد أن سكان القرية يمكنهم إنتاج المزيد من الطعام.

وتقول لهم إن القمح ينمو بشكل جيد جداً في مصر وهو رائع لصناعة الخبز والkek اللذيذ.

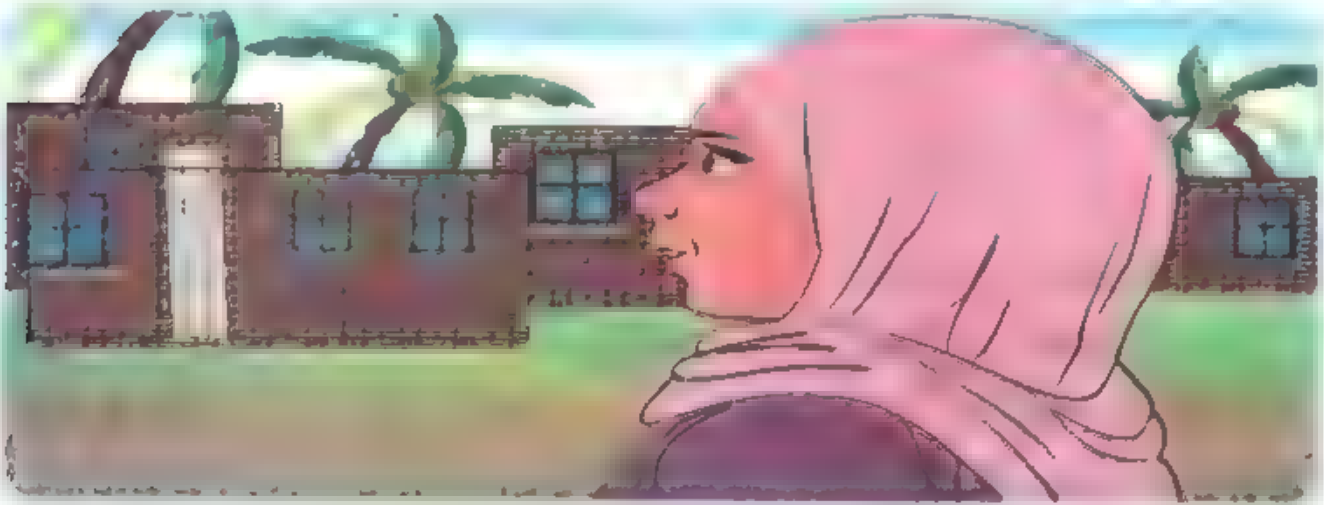
بعض أهل القرية تعجبهم الفكرة وسعدوا في زراعة القمح في بعض حقولهم.

## DALIA SAVES THE VILLAGE!



From the wheat they can make flour. From the flour they can make delicious Egyptian bread. Grandma can make more of her **awesome** cookies. The villagers make bread and cookies to sell to other villages.

الكعك الرائع . يقوم أهل القرية بصنائه الخبز والكعك لكي يبيعوه للمري لأخرى



In a few years, everything is better in the village. Dalia walks around the village and sees the changes. She is very proud. When she grows up, she works with **agriculture** to help other people with their crops.

تكبره ستعمل في مجال الزراعة لمساعدة الناس في محاصيلهم

# Activities

## 1 Read and tick (✓) or (✗).

- 1) Dalia thinks the villagers can produce more food.
- 2) Wheat doesn't grow well in Egypt.
- 3) The villagers make flour from the wheat.
- 4) The villagers sell bread and cookies to other villages.
- 5) Everything is worse in the village.
- 6) Dalia is very proud.

## 2 Complete the sentences with the words in the box.

culture bread - wheat flour - proud

- 1) Dalia has a \_\_\_\_\_.
- 2) \_\_\_\_\_ grows very well in Egypt.
- 3) \_\_\_\_\_ grow wheat in some of their fields.
- 4) The villagers make \_\_\_\_\_ from the wheat.
- 5) The villagers make \_\_\_\_\_ and \_\_\_\_\_ to sell to other villages.
- 6) Dalia is very \_\_\_\_\_ of the village.
- 7) When Dalia grows up, she works with \_\_\_\_\_.

## 3 Answer the following questions.

- 1) What is Dalia's plan?
- 2) What can villagers make from the wheat?



## Activities in Review (4)

### 1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة

- It's \_\_\_\_\_ to be safe online.  
a) unimportant b) important c) useless d) bad
- You \_\_\_\_\_ keep your password secret.  
a) shouldn't b) should c) mustn't d) can't
- You should \_\_\_\_\_ to be friends only with people you know.  
a) share b) keep c) accept d) make
- You \_\_\_\_\_ share your personal information.  
a) shouldn't b) must c) can d) should

### 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة

- Cars and buses are means of \_\_\_\_\_.  
a) transportations b) foods c) information d) sports
- I try to be \_\_\_\_\_ and think about new ideas.  
a) stupid b) creative c) bad d) angry

### 3 Read and complete the text with words from the box.

اقرأ واكمل النص بكلمات من الصندوق

logged in - tagged - mom - shouldn't - should

Last week I wasn't very happy with my friend.  
My friend 1) \_\_\_\_\_ me in a photo and it showed on my social media page. When I 2) \_\_\_\_\_, I saw the photo. I was buying a present for my 3) \_\_\_\_\_ for her birthday and it was a surprise! I talked to another friend and he said, "You 4) \_\_\_\_\_ change your settings so you can check photos you are tagged in!"

4

Read the text and answer the questions. اقرأ النص و اجب عن الاسئلة.

My favorite transportation is by boat. When you are on the water, you can see the river animals and plants. It is also very peaceful because you only hear the water. I like ships too, but I prefer smaller transportation on the water. Buses are good too, but sometimes they get very crowded, particularly after school and work, when lots of people go home. It's better when they're empty and you are on the bus with one or two people. You can see a lot of the city from the bus. But the problem is you stop all the time!

A) Choose the correct answer.

- 1) My favorite transportation is by  
a) ship      b) boat      c) plane      d) bike
- 2) You can see the river animals and  
a) plants      b) stars      c) planets      d) schools

B) Answer the following questions.

- 3) What is the main idea of the text?
- 4) When do buses get very crowded?

5

Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets. اقرأ واكتب الشكل الصحيح للكلمات التي بين القوس.

1. You need to a helmet when you are on your bike.
2. You must wear a seat belt in your car.
3. You should ask your parents.
4. You should tell your password to everyone.

6

Punctuate the following sentence. مع علامات الترقيم الجملة التالية.

you need to wear a helmet on your bike

7

Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words about:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (18) كلمة عن

Air pollution

Guiding words:

(cars - pollution - chemicals)

# Listening Texts

## Unit (7)

### Lesson (3)

In the city, the smoke from the cars covered the stars. The noise was incredibly loud. The city is exciting but it's too scary. The country life is quieter. It is cleaner than the city.

### Lessons (4 & 5)

Grandpa says that his mom and dad drove gas cars. They were very noisy. Our town had a cleaner area, but it was very old. My dad worked in a shoe store on Saturdays. Our town is different now.

### Activities on Unit (7)

The Nile brings life to the whole of Egypt. It's about 6,670 kilometers long. It is like travelling to the center of the earth. The Nile has two branches in Egypt.

### Al-Azhar Corner

The Nile is the longest river in the world. It has two branches in Egypt. The Nile crocodile lives in it.

Nada and her family went to the supermarket yesterday at night. They bought many things. Nada bought two bottles of milk. Nada's mom bought two bars of soap, two pieces of cheese and a packet of cookies.

### Lesson (3)

Last weekend we went to Damietta to see Grandma and Grandpa, who live by the sea. We swam in the water. We saw lots of fish and an octopus, too! Grandpa caught a fish.

### Lesson (5)

Eid Al-Fitr is a Muslim festival. The month before Eid is called Ramadan. Many Muslims fast during the day. This means they don't eat or drink until sunset. In the month of Ramadan, people think about the past year.

### Lesson (3)

We had a huge picnic in my aunt's garden.

There was lots of food: salad, meat, fish, bread, cakes, cookies, and fruit. I ate a big slice of chocolate cake and I drank a bottle of orange juice. I also ate some salad and fruit.

### Activities on Unit (8)

Eid is a time of celebration and for being happy. People say Eid Mubarak to their friends. People go to the mosque and spend time with their families. They eat delicious food and celebrate!

### Al-Azhar Corner

Last weekend we went to Damietta to see Grandparents. They live by the sea. We saw lots of fish.

### February Text

Last Monday we went to Alexandria to see my grandparents who live by the sea. We swam in the water. It was deep and blue. We saw lots of fish and my grandpa caught a big fish, too. Grandma made the fish into a lovely dish.

### Unit (8)

### Lesson (3)

Musical chairs is a game in which you run but be ready to sit! How to play: put out some chairs. If you have 6 players, you only need 5 chairs. Players run around the chairs.

When the music stops, everyone sits down. The player without the chair is 'out'. Take away one chair and play again.

### Lesson (3)

We make a lot of moves and many of them are famous. We have authors who won important prizes. And of course, we love sports! Anyone who loves karate knows the name of one very famous karate player, Ferial Abdelaziz.

### Activities on Unit (9)

More than half of Egyptians are under the age of 30. This means we are full of energy. We are helpful to each other and we are very friendly to visitors. We are very hospitable people.



## Listening Texts

### Al-Azhar Corner

The Egyptian food can be described with one word: wonderful. The most famous is ful medames. Basbousa is a thin, sweet semolina cake with syrup.

#### Activities on Review (3)

Last weekend we went to Damietta to see Grandma and Grandpa, who live by the sea. The sea was deep and blue. We saw lots of fish, and an octopus, too!

#### Unit (10)

##### Lesson (1)

Last week I had some homework about chameleons. I logged into a library website and created a password. I found information. Our teacher, Miss Lamia, loved our presentation. Hooray!

#### Lesson (2)

Magdy started a new school. He had a problem with online bullying. Sherif said that Magdy was stupid. I talked to his teacher. Now Magdy is happy.

#### Lesson (3)

Hadeer met her neighbor, Rania, at the restaurant. Rania was sad because her children love playing computer games. They don't do their homework. They don't go outside.

#### Lesson (4)

Many people say that computer games are bad for children. Children can spend many hours on their computers and tablets. They look at the screen and they don't go outside or do their homework. Parents say this is not healthy for their children.

#### Activities on Unit (10)

Last week I had some homework about chameleons. I logged into a library website and created a password. I found information. I worked with my friend, Yara. Our teacher, Miss Lamia, loved our presentation!

### Al Azhar Corner

Last week I had some homework about chameleons. I logged into library website and I created a strong password. I got the information.

#### March Test

Egypt is a great country. It is famous for its history. More than half of Egyptians are under the age of 30. Egyptians are full of energy. They are helpful to each other. They are very friendly to visitors and guests.

#### Unit (11)

##### Lesson (1)

There are many kinds of transportation. When I travel by plane, I go through the air. When I travel by ship and boat, I'm on the water. When I travel by bus and taxi, I'm on the road. I travel to Luxor from Cairo by train.

#### Lesson (2)

Most children need to know how to be safe on the road. Here are some tips.

- You need a helmet on your bike.
- You need a seat belt in your car.
- You need to look left and right.
- You need a green light to cross the road.

#### Lesson (3)

In Gharbia, Egypt, farmers wanted to have cleaner air. To do that, they stopped burning rice straw. They used the straw to make food for their animals and cover their crops.

#### Activities on Unit (11)

Mazen and Dalida are brother and sister. They love their school. Their teachers are very kind. Their father is a teacher. He works in a school in the city.

### Al Azhar Corner

1) My favorite transportation is a ship. I love travelling on water. I go to school on foot.

#### Activities on Review (4)

-) It's important to be safe online. You should keep your password secret. You should accept to be friends only with people you know. You shouldn't share your personal information.

Primary  
4

# AL-BAHER

## Connect

### Final Revision

#### Second Term





# LANGUAGE FOCUS

## The Past Simple Tense زمن الماضي البسيط

### Usage الاستخدام

يستخدم الماضي البسيط للتعبير عن فعل حدث وانتهى في الماضي.

- We **played** football on this street.

- He **pulled** out an old, metal box.

### Form التكوين

يتكون زمن الماضي البسيط من التصريف الثاني للفعل.

### Regular verbs الأفعال المنتظمة

يضاف (d, ed, led) إلى الفعل المنتظم.

like → liked pull → pulled carry → carried

### Spelling Notes:

١- إذا كان الفعل ينتهي بـ (e) يضاف (d) فقط.

like → liked live → lived

٢- إذا كان الفعل ينتهي بـ (y) ويسبقه حرف ساكن نحذف (y) ثم نصيف (ied).

bury → buried study → studied

٣- إذا كان الفعل ينتهي بـ (y) ويسبقه حرف متحرك يتم إضافة (ed) للفعل.

play → played stay → stayed

٤- إذا انتهى الفعل بحرف ساكن مسبقاً بحرف متحرك، نضاعف الحرف الساكن الآخر.

stop → stopped travel → travelled

### Irregular verbs الأفعال غير المنتظمة تحفظ كما هي

am / is → was are → were

swim → swam see → saw

## Language

### Negative النفي

**Subject (فاعل) + didn't + Inf. (مصدر الفعل)**

e.g. We **didn't play** football on this street.

- He **didn't bury** the box.

### Questions

**(Yes / No) question** السؤال بـ (هل)

**Did + subject (فاعل) + Inf. (مصدر الفعل) ...?**

e.g. Did you **do** your homework?

- Yes, I **did**.

- No, I **didn't**.

**Wh- question** السؤال بكلمة استفهام

**Q.W + did + subject (فاعل) + Inf. (مصدر الفعل) ...?**

e.g. **When** did you **get up**?

- I **got up** at seven o'clock.

**Keywords** الكلمات الدالة

yesterday

أمس ago

منذ

last (week/... )

in the past (الأسبوع/..) الماضي

في الماضي

e.g. I **studied** English yesterday.

- Last Friday, he **played** football.

- Cairo **was** quiet many years ago.

## Verb to (be) in the past

was

were

I / He / She / It / A singular noun + was

e.g. - It **was** very quiet when I lived here.

We / You / They / A plural noun + were

e.g. - They **were** at the museum yesterday.

## Negative النفي

He / She / It + was not (wasn't)

e.g. - Grandpa's village **wasn't** very noisy.

We / You / They + were not (weren't)

e.g. - There **weren't** any cars on the street.

## Questions

## (Yes / No) question السؤال (نعم / لا)

**Was** + ( he / she / It / a singular noun) ... ?e.g. - **Was** Grandpa very excited?- **Yes**, he **was**.- **No**, he **wasn't**.**Were** + ( we / you / they / a plural noun) ... ?e.g. - **Were** they in the village?- **Yes**, they **were**.- **No**, they **were not**.

## Conjugation of verbs

نصريف الافعال

### Regular verbs الافعال منتظمة

| Present |            | Past     | Present   |             | Past        |
|---------|------------|----------|-----------|-------------|-------------|
| help    | يساعد      | helped   | serve     | يقدم        | served      |
| need    | يحتاج      | needed   | listen    | يسمع        | listened    |
| cry     | يبكي       | cried    | work      | يعمل        | worked      |
| pull    | يسحب       | pulled   | enjoy     | يستمتع بـ   | enjoyed     |
| bury    | يدفن       | buried   | use       | يستخدم      | used        |
| walk    | يمشي       | walked   | taste     | يتذوق       | tasted      |
| study   | يذاكر      | studied  | wrap      | يلعب / يغلف | wrapped     |
| cross   | يعبر       | crossed  | remember  | يتذكر       | remembered  |
| look    | ينظر       | looked   | try       | يحاول       | tried       |
| wait    | ينتظر      | waited   | talk      | يتكلم       | talked      |
| rain    | تمطر       | rained   | click on  | ينقر على    | clicked on  |
| cover   | يغطي       | covered  | decorate  | يزين        | decorated   |
| carry   | يحمل       | carried  | represent | يمثل        | represented |
| want    | يريد       | wanted   | celebrate | يحتفل       | celebrated  |
| stay    | يقم / يبقى | stayed   | snow      | تسج         | snowed      |
| happen  | يحدث       | happened | push      | يدفع        | pushed      |
| ask     | يسأل       | asked    | join      | يضم إلى     | joined      |
| cycle   | يركب دراجة | cycled   | laugh     | يضحك        | laughed     |
| tag     | يشير       | tagged   | share     | يشارك       | shared      |
| bully   | يتنمر      | bullied  | watch     | يشاهد       | watched     |

| Present |               | Past      | Present  |               | Past        |
|---------|---------------|-----------|----------|---------------|-------------|
| move    | يتحرك / يتنقل | moved     | post     | يرسل بالبريد  | posted      |
| travel  | يسافر         | travelled | upload   | يرفع على النت | uploaded    |
| follow  | يتبع          | followed  | stop     | يتوقف عن      | stopped     |
| kill    | يقتل          | killed    | replace  | يستبدل        | replaced    |
| harm    | يضر / يؤذي    | harmed    | thank    | يشكر          | thanked     |
| save    | ينقذ          | saved     | decide   | يقرر          | decided     |
| breathe | يتنفس         | breathed  | pollute  | يلوث          | polluted    |
| message | يرسل رسالة    | messaged  | solve    | يحل           | solved      |
| copy    | ينسخ          | copied    | learn    | يتعلم         | learned/t   |
| chat    | يحدثش         | chatted   | log into | يسجل دخول     | logged into |
| cough   | يكح / يسعل    | coughed   | call     | يتصل          | called      |
| improve | يحسن          | improved  | increase | يزداد / يزيد  | increased   |
| invite  | يدعو          | invited   | turn on  | يشغل          | turned on   |
| provide | يبد / يروء    | provided  | reduce   | يقلل          | reduced     |

### Irregular verbs افعال غير منتظمة

| Present |          | Past  |  | Present |           | Past  |  |
|---------|----------|-------|--|---------|-----------|-------|--|
| ride    | يركب     | rode  |  | choose  | يختار     | chose |  |
| write   | يكتب     | wrote |  | meet    | يقابل     | met   |  |
| send    | يرسل     | sent  |  | keep    | يحافظ على | kept  |  |
| get     | يحصل على | got   |  | fall    | يقع       | fell  |  |
| make    | يصنع     | made  |  | sit     | يجلس      | sat   |  |
| spend   | يقضي     | spent |  | fly     | يطير      | flew  |  |



## Language

| Present | Past        | Present    | Past     |
|---------|-------------|------------|----------|
| hurt    | يؤذي / يؤذى | hurt       | grew     |
| come    | يأتي        | wear       | wore     |
| sell    | يبيع        | have / has | had      |
| dig     | يحفر        | break      | broke    |
| say     | يقول        | get up     | got up   |
| tell    | يخبر        | am / is    | was      |
| give    | يعطي        | are        | were     |
| know    | يعرف        | put on     | put on   |
| hold    | يمسك        | throw      | threw    |
| run     | يجري        | win        | won      |
| go      | يذهب        | drive      | drove    |
| drink   | يشرب        | take off   | took off |
| think   | يعتقد       | leave      | left     |
| read    | يقرا        | swim       | swam     |
| eat     | ياكل        | speak      | spoke    |
| find    | يجد         | take       | took     |
| sing    | يغني        | hide       | hid      |
| feel    | يشعر        | see        |          |

# General Activities

**1** Choose the correct answer from **a** , **b**, **c** or **d**. بمراجعة الإجابة الصحيحة

1. Grandpa \_\_\_\_\_ very excited yesterday.  
 a) was                      b) were                      c) be                      d) is
2. Last holiday, we \_\_\_\_\_ in the village.  
 a) was                      b) were                      c) are                      d) is
3. \_\_\_\_\_ was very quiet.  
 a) You                      b) It                      c) They                      d) We
4. There \_\_\_\_\_ lots of visitors in the hotel last year.  
 a) was                      b) is                      c) were                      d) are
5. In the past, there \_\_\_\_\_ no planes.  
 a) is                      b) was                      c) were                      d) are
6. I \_\_\_\_\_ eight years old when I buried the box.  
 a) is                      b) was                      c) were                      d) am
7. \_\_\_\_\_ were very happy yesterday.  
 a) They                      b) It                      c) He                      d) She
8. I \_\_\_\_\_ seven years old last year.  
 a) was                      b) were                      c) are                      d) is
9. We \_\_\_\_\_ math yesterday.  
 a) study                      b) studied                      c) studies                      d) studying
10. Last week, we \_\_\_\_\_ to Damietta.  
 a) go                      b) goes                      c) went                      d) going
11. Grandpa \_\_\_\_\_ by the sea in the past.  
 a) lived                      b) living                      c) lives                      d) live

## Language

12. Last summer, Dad \_\_\_\_\_ a fish.  
a) catch      b) catches      c) catching      d) caught
13. Yesterday, they \_\_\_\_\_ pizza.  
a) eat      b) ate      c) eats      d) eaten
14. The boys \_\_\_\_\_ happy two days ago.  
a) feel      b) feeling      c) feels      d) felt
15. It \_\_\_\_\_ hot yesterday.  
a) was      b) are      c) were      d) 'is
16. I \_\_\_\_\_ a cake, but I used salt instead of sugar.  
a) make      b) made      c) makes      d) making
17. Ali had his swimming test yesterday. He \_\_\_\_\_ 50 meters.  
a) swims      b) swim      c) swimming      d) swam
18. They \_\_\_\_\_ too many candies last week.  
a) ate      b) eating      c) eats      d) eaten
19. Yesterday, they \_\_\_\_\_ in the park.  
a) play      b) plays      c) playing      d) played
20. We all \_\_\_\_\_ a song in the class yesterday.  
a) sings      b) sang      c) singing      d) will sing
21. We \_\_\_\_\_ a huge picnic last Friday.  
a) has      b) had      c) have      d) having
22. We \_\_\_\_\_ a play last week.  
a) see      b) saw      c) seen      d) sees
23. Mum \_\_\_\_\_ me to take a shower because I was covered in mud.  
a) tell      b) told      c) telling      d) tells

24. The bird \_\_\_\_\_ up high into the sky.  
a) fly                      b) flying                      c) flew                      d) flown
25. \_\_\_\_\_, we ate Ful Medames.  
a) Yesterday              b) Now                      c) Tomorrow              d) Next
26. Last week my sister \_\_\_\_\_ an email to Grandma.  
a) send                      b) sent                      c) sending                      d) sends
27. When \_\_\_\_\_ you get up yesterday?  
a) did                      b) do                      c) does                      d) done
28. What subjects did you \_\_\_\_\_ yesterday?  
a) study                      b) studies                      c) studied                      d) studying
29. \_\_\_\_\_ you at home yesterday?  
a) Was                      b) Are                      c) Were                      d) Is
30. \_\_\_\_\_ you like your first day of school?  
a) Does                      b) Doing                      c) Did                      d) Is
31. Where did you \_\_\_\_\_ last night?  
a) go                      b) goes                      c) gone                      d) went
32. Why were \_\_\_\_\_ surprised?  
a) he                      b) she                      c) It                      d) they
33. My great-grandma \_\_\_\_\_ 90 years old two years ago.  
a) is                      b) are                      c) was                      d) were
34. We didn't \_\_\_\_\_ football yesterday.  
a) play                      b) plays                      c) playing                      d) played
35. My sister didn't \_\_\_\_\_ the ball.  
a) threw                      b) thrown                      c) throws                      d) throw

## Language

2

Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

اقرأ واكتب الشكل الصحيح للكلمات التي بين الأقواس

1. We (be) in the village last summer.
2. There (be) no metro in the past.
3. Yesterday, he (go) to the park.
4. They (study) math last Sunday.
5. Grandpa (catch) a fish two days ago.
6. I (see) a great movie last night.
7. Sara (eat) many sweets. She felt sick.
8. The girls (sing) a song in the class yesterday.
9. They didn't (swam) in the sea.
10. How did you (felt)?
11. Did you (helps) your mother?
12. Heba (gets) up at seven o'clock yesterday.
13. Ali (visit) his uncle last week.
14. Why did the mice (had) to run away?
15. Younis (live) in Aswan ten years ago.
16. We (play) football last Friday.
17. We didn't (went) to Damietta.
18. (Do) catch fish yesterday?
19. I (be) very tired last night.
20. Mona (drink) a carton of juice last Monday.

3

Complete the table.

أكمل الجدول

| Present | Past   | Present   | Past      |
|---------|--------|-----------|-----------|
| travel  | .....  | celebrate | .....     |
| live    | .....  | serve     | .....     |
| pull    | .....  | .....     | decorated |
|         | played | remember  | .....     |
|         | pushed | study     | .....     |



**4** Change into negative.

حول إلى السّلب

1. It was very quiet.
2. They were very excited.
3. I saw my friends at the party.
4. They studied English yesterday.
5. He saw a jellyfish last summer.
6. Sara felt very sad.
7. The day was long.
8. I lived in Aswan.

**5** Make questions.

صوّر أسئلة

1. Yes, he was very excited.
2. No, they weren't at the park.
3. Hany went to the park yesterday.
4. We ate ice cream last week.
5. I visited Aswan last year.

(Where .....?)

(What ....?)

(When .. ...?)

## Suffix (-ful) اللاحقة

We can make an adjective by adding **-ful** to the end of a verb or a noun.

يمكنك تكوين الصفة بإضافة المقطع "ful" إلى نهاية الفعل أو الاسم

| Word     |                    | Adjective |                |
|----------|--------------------|-----------|----------------|
| care     | بهدد / بحرص / بحسن | careful   | دقيق           |
| pain (n) | ألم                | painful   | ألم            |
| beauty   | جمال               | beautiful | جميل           |
| help (v) | يساعد              | helpful   | معاون          |
| wonder   | تعجب / استعجب      | wonderful | رائع           |
| use (v)  | يستخدم             | useful    | مفيد           |
| color    | لون / ألوان        | colorful  | مليّن بالألوان |

### Examples

I am very careful when I go online.

I hurt my leg. It's very painful.

Alia's dress is beautiful. We all love it.

These tools are very useful for fixing our door.

That shirt has red, blue and green stripes. It's very colorful.

Learning about Egypt is wonderful. It has an amazing history.

# General Activities

## 1 Complete the table.

أكمل الجدول

| Word   | Adjective |
|--------|-----------|
| beauty |           |
|        | helpful   |
| wonder |           |
| color  | .....     |
| .....  | useful    |
| care   |           |
|        | painful   |

## 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة

- Adam is very ..... He helped me carry the bags.  
a) help      b) helpless      c) helpful      d) helps
- Be ..... when you cross the street.  
a) careful      b) beautiful      c) painful      d) useful
- Toka's necklabe is ..... I love it.  
a) helpful      b) careful      c) beautiful      d) painful
- He hurt his arm. It was very .....  
a) pain      b) friendly      c) useful      d) painful
- That bird is very .....  
a) care      b) color      c) colorful      d) colors
- I think computers are .....  
a) use      b) using      c) useful      d) uses

## Language

### 3 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

اقرأ واكتب الشكل الصحيح للكلمة التي بين القوسين

1. I am ..... (care) when I go online.
2. Her dress is very ..... (beauty).
3. My tooth hurts. It's very ..... (pain).
4. The computer is very ..... (use).
5. The parrot is ..... (color).
6. My grandpa is ..... (help).
7. My mother's food is ..... (wonder).
8. I'm proud of my brother. He is ..... (success).

### 4 Match the word with the adjective.

صل الكلمة بالصفة

- |           |              |
|-----------|--------------|
| 1) wonder | a) helpful   |
| 2) care   | b) colorful  |
| 3) color  | c) wonderful |
| 4) help   | d) careful   |

1- ( )

2- ( )

3- ( )

4- ( )

### 5 Put the word in a sentence.

ضع الكلمة في جملة

1) careful ⇒ I am careful when I go online.

2) beautiful ⇒ \_\_\_\_\_

3) painful ⇒ \_\_\_\_\_

4) useful ⇒ \_\_\_\_\_

5) colorful ⇒ \_\_\_\_\_

6) helpful ⇒ \_\_\_\_\_

7) wonderful ⇒ \_\_\_\_\_

# Modal verbs

الأفعال الناقصة

## For advice

**Subject (الفاعل) + should + inf. (مصدر الفعل)**

نستخدم (should) عند التوجيه أو النصيحة.

e.g. I should only give my phone number to my friends

e.g. You should turn your phone off at night.

**Subject (الفاعل) + shouldn't + inf. (مصدر الفعل)**

نستخدم (shouldn't) عند التحذير من فعل ما.

e.g. I shouldn't use my phone late at night

e.g. You shouldn't make new friends online with people you don't know.

## For necessity

**Subject (الفاعل) + need to + inf. (مصدر الفعل)**

نستخدم الفعل (need) لشيء مهم أو ضروري.

e.g. You need to look left and right when you cross a road

**Subject (الفاعل) + need + noun. (اسم)**

e.g. You need a helmet on your bike.



## 3 For obligation الإلزام

نستخدم ( must ) للتعبير عن الإلزام بفعل شيء أو عدم فعله.

**Subject ( ) + must + Inf. ( )**

e.g. We **must follow** road signs.

e.g. We **must learn** to help others.

**Subject ( ) + mustn't + Inf. ( )**

e.g. You **mustn't run** on the road

e.g. You **mustn't play** with matches.

## 4 For ability للقدرة

**Subject ( ) + can + Inf. ( )**

نستخدم ( can ) للتعبير عن القدرة على فعل شيء.

e.g. We **can plant** more trees to help us breathe better.

e.g. We **can ride** bikes to help the environment.

**Subject ( ) + can't + Inf. ( )**

نستخدم ( can't ) للتعبير عن عدم القدرة على فعل شيء ما أو عدم السماح بفعل شيء ما.

e.g. You **can't swim** in the canal.

e.g. You **can't paint** on the wall.

e.g. You **can't ride** a bike here.

# General Activities

## 1 Put (should - shouldn't

ضع (should - shouldn't).

- You  have a very strong password
- You  only speak to people you know online
- You  speak to strangers on the internet.
4. You  be a bully online.
- You  turn your phone off at night.

## 2 Look at the signs and can - can't

انظر إلى اللافتات و ضع (can - can't).



You  swim here.



You  go straight and turn right



You  ride your bike here.



You  park here



We  plant more trees.

## 3 Choose the correct answer

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة

I  talk to someone I don't know online

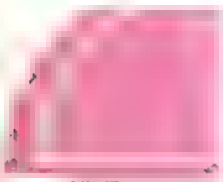
☐ must ☒ should ☐ shouldn't ☐ can

You  look left and right before you cross the road.

☐ can't ☒ shouldn't ☐ must ☐ mustn't

3. You  wear a seat belt in a car.

☒ must ☐ can't ☐ shouldn't ☐ need



I have a strong password.

shouldn't mustn't must (4) can't

You use your phone late at night.

should shouldn't must can

I only give my phone number to my friends.

can't should shouldn't mustn't

You shouldn't your friends online.

bully bullied bullies bullying

8. I must the road signs.

follow follows followed following

4

Words between brackets

اقرأ واكتب بالشكل الصحيح للكلمات التي بين الأقواس

I should turns my phone off at night.

I need look left and right.

You can goes straight and turn right.

We must listens for cars before we cross the road.

You shouldn't have a strong password.

You must smoke in the hospital.

You should sleeps early.

We need to a green light to cross the road.

We shouldn't be careful on roads.

We should wore a seat belt in the car.

We shouldn't follow the road signs.

You must crossed the road at the crosswalk.

We can had many plants on the balcony.

You need take the bus.

We must speak loudly in the library.

You should (got) enough sleep.

## Unit (7)

## This is where I live

### Vocabulary

|          |           |               |
|----------|-----------|---------------|
| the Nile | river     | delighted     |
| building | village   | excited       |
| city     | curious   | mouse/mice    |
| desert   | visitors  | moral         |
| branches | nervous   | bright lights |
| forest   | quiet     | catch a train |
| mountain | metal box | the country   |
| oasis    | pleased   | fraction      |

### Language

### The Past Simple Tense

### Usage

- We **played** football on this street.

**Form** The second form of the verb.

**Negative** Subject **didn't** inf.

- We **didn't play** football on this street

**(Yes / No) question** **Did** subject inf. ?

- **Did you go** to the market? - Yes, I **did**. - No, I **didn't**.

**Wh- question** Q.W **did** subject inf. ?

- **When did you get up?** I **got up** at seven o'clock.

### Keywords

yesterday

ago

last (week / ... )

in the past

I **studied** English

# General Activities

مع الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

## 1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة.

- The Nile is the \_\_\_\_\_ river in the world.  
a) longest      b) shortest      c) smallest      d) slowest
- The \_\_\_\_\_ is 6.670 kilometers long.  
a) tower      b) Nile      c) lake      d) sea
- The Nile is \_\_\_\_\_ for different fish, birds and turtles  
a) building      b) apartment      c) home      d) garden
- The Nile \_\_\_\_\_ lives in it.  
a) cow      b) donkey      c) lion      d) crocodile

## 2 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة.

- I lived in \_\_\_\_\_  
a) Cairo      b) Giza      c) Tanta      d) Aswan
- I was very \_\_\_\_\_  
a) happy      b) thirsty      c) nervous      d) hungry
- I liked staying at \_\_\_\_\_ with my family.  
a) home      b) library      c) park      d) garden
- I wanted to play with my \_\_\_\_\_  
a) dogs      b) toys      c) friends      d) cats

## 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

- The Nile is the \_\_\_\_\_ river in the world.  
a) longest      b) shortest      c) longer      d) smallest
- There are a lot of trees in the \_\_\_\_\_  
a) river      b) desert      c) forest      d) mountain
- The Nile has two \_\_\_\_\_ in Egypt  
a) animals      b) birds      c) fish      d) branches

Help your child deal with such questions

ساعد طفلك في التعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة



## Final Revision

I was

at school. I didn't want to go.

hungry

nervous

hot

cold

5.  $\frac{2}{4}$  is

4

8

bigger than

less than

the same as

smaller than

6 Cairo is the

of Egypt.

capital

town

moon

forest

There are a lot of high

in my city.

deserts

buildings

rivers

seas

8. I carry my

to school.

toy

backpack

bed

desk

I live in a

There are tall buildings.

village

town

city

desert

10 The

lives in the Nile

whale

bear

monkey

crocodile

Our school has a big metal

at the front.

book

desk

chair

gate

12 The city is full of

lights.

a) dark

b) pale

c) bright

d) low

I was

to read city mouse and country mouse story

It was funny.

scared

bored

pleased

angry

We can

a train at eight to the city

a) make

b) go

c) play

d) catch

Cars that use electricity are much

quieter

noisier

louder

hotter

16. I

my box of memories here.

walked

buried

visited

talked

## Unit (7)

3

Complete the text with words from the box.

أكمل النص بكلمات من المربع.

quiet - part -

My father's house was in a village in Aswan. The street was  
1) \_\_\_\_\_ in the past. Now there are lots of 2) \_\_\_\_\_ and  
trucks. My father and his friends played football on this  
3) \_\_\_\_\_. Now there isn't enough space. When my father  
was a child, he helped his friend to 4) \_\_\_\_\_ a small tree on  
the side of the street.

Complete the text with words from the box.

أكمل النص بكلمات من المربع.

lion - longest -

The Nile brings the life to the whole Egypt. It's the 1)  
river in the world. It's about 6.670 kilometers long. It's like  
travelling to the center of the 2) \_\_\_\_\_. It has two  
3) \_\_\_\_\_ in Egypt. The Nile 4) \_\_\_\_\_ lives in it

Complete the text with words from the box.

أكمل النص بكلمات من المربع.

quiet - moved -

Last year I visited my Grandpa's village. It was a 1)  
and beautiful place. There were lots of trees, but there 2)  
any trains. Grandpa's parents 3) \_\_\_\_\_ to this village when he  
was three. He played football 4) \_\_\_\_\_ his home.

4 Read the text and answer the questions. اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة.

I remember my first day of school. I put on a blue T-shirt, gray pants, and black shoes. I carried my backpack. Mom and I walked to school. At the school gate, I wanted to cry. I said goodbye and I walked into the classroom. The teacher was very kind. We studied math and played games; it was fun!

A) Choose the correct word.

- 1) I carried my ..... to school.  
 a) books      b) backpack      c) box      d) shoes
- 2) The teacher was very .....  
 a) quiet      b) kind      c) sad      d) happy

B) Answer the following questions.

How did you go to school?

Summarize the text in one sentence.

5 Read the text and answer the questions. اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة.

The city mouse visited the country mouse in his hole in the ground. The country mouse was pleased. He gave his friend grass and seeds. The city mouse said, 'Thank you. You know, the city is pretty and full of bright lights, why don't you come and see?' The country mouse was ..... and very excited. The city mouse stopped eating and said, 'There's no reason to wait. We can catch a train at eight.'

A) Choose the correct word.

- 1) The underlined word "....." means .....  
 a) unhappy      b) sad      c) pleased      d) depressed
- 2) The country mouse gave his friend ..... and seeds.  
 a) leaves      b) grass      c) roots      d) flowers

B) Answer the following questions.

Where did the country mouse live?

When can they catch a train?

5

Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

اقرأ واكتب الشكل الصحيح للكلمات التي بين الأقواس.

1. How did you \_\_\_\_\_ ( ) at school?
2. I \_\_\_\_\_ ( ) to this village when I was five.
3. I didn't \_\_\_\_\_ ( ) to go to school.
4. What \_\_\_\_\_ (do) Ali wear last Sunday?
5. Mom \_\_\_\_\_ (walks) to work yesterday.
6. We \_\_\_\_\_ (study) math two hours ago.
7. I \_\_\_\_\_ (be) eight years old when I buried the box of memories.
8. .... ( ) you go to school yesterday?
9. When did you \_\_\_\_\_ ( ) up?
10. Last weekend I \_\_\_\_\_ ( ) my uncle.

6

Punctuate the following sentences.

1) the Nile is very long

2) we are proud of our country Egypt

7

Write a paragraph of \_\_\_\_\_ ( ) words about:

Your town then and now

Guiding words:

( buildings - cars - shopping )

Your first day of school

Guiding words:

( remember - six - put on )

## Quantifiers محددات الكمية

|                     |             |                   |            |
|---------------------|-------------|-------------------|------------|
| a carton of juice   | علبة عصير   | a bar of soap     | قطعة صابون |
| a packet of cookies | حزمة بسكويت | a bottle of water | زجاجة ماء  |
| a slice of meat     | شريحة لحم   | a slice of cake   | شريحة كعكة |
| a piece of cheese   | قطعة جبنة   | a carton of milk  | علبة لبن   |
| a bar of chocolate  | شوكولاتة    | a piece of bread  | قطعة خبز   |

## Others

|             |        |          |      |             |           |
|-------------|--------|----------|------|-------------|-----------|
| Shawwal     | شوال   | fast     | صيام | poem        | شعر       |
| kahk        | كحك    | grandma  | جدّة | Eid Al-Fitr | عيد الفطر |
| mosque      | مسجد   | friendly | ودود | surprised   | مفاجئ     |
| celebration | احتفال | picnic   | فندق | decorate    | تزيين     |

## Social Studies



Eid Al-Fitr is a Muslim festival.

Kahk are delicious cookies.



All Egyptians celebrate Sham El-Nessim.



During Sham El-Nessim, people eat fesikh and colored eggs.



# General Activities

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

## 1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, h, c, or d.

استمع وقم دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة

- I have ..... with my family every day.  
a) breakfast      b) lunch      c) dinner      d) snacks
- I like to have a ..... of cookies.  
a) slice      b) packet      c) bar      d) bottle
- My father likes to have a slice of .....  
a) cookies      b) meat      c) cake      d) cheese
- My sister likes to have a ..... of chocolate.  
a) piece      b) bottle      c) packet      d) bar

## 2 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, h, c, or d.

استمع وقم دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة

- I went to the ..... last night.  
a) zoo      b) park      c) cinema      d) school
- We went in a .....  
a) taxi      b) bus      c) car      d) train
- We ..... a great movie.  
a) played      b) acted      c) had      d) saw
- We went to a good .....  
a) park      b) restaurant      c) café      d) garden

## 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة

- Eid Al-Fitr comes after .....  
a) spring      b) winter      c) Ramadan      d) Shawwal
- Muslims ..... during the day in Ramadan.  
a) eat      b) swim      c) fast      d) drink
- She drank a ..... of water.  
a) piece      b) bar      c) bottle      d) tank

4. We color \_\_\_\_\_ in Sham El-Nessim.  
a) eggs                      b) kahk                      c) meat                      d) sweets
5. I have a \_\_\_\_\_ of milk.  
a) packet                      b) bottle                      c) slice                      d) bar
6. Kahk are delicious \_\_\_\_\_.  
a) meat                      b) cookies                      c) sugar                      d) tea
7. People eat delicious food and \_\_\_\_\_ at Eid Al-Fitr.  
a) sleep                      b) celebrate                      c) cook                      d) drink
8. We had a \_\_\_\_\_ with our families.  
a) picnic                      b) lesson                      c) job                      d) work
9. My dad gave me a \_\_\_\_\_ on my birthday.  
a) chair                      b) present                      c) player                      d) winner
10. This food isn't good. It tastes \_\_\_\_\_.  
a) good                      b) delicious                      c) sad                      d) horrible
11. I want a \_\_\_\_\_ of chocolate.  
a) bar                      b) carton                      c) bottle                      d) glass
12. To \_\_\_\_\_ is not to eat or drink.  
a) sleep                      b) run                      c) fast                      d) play
13. We stayed in a hotel \_\_\_\_\_ the sea.  
a) of                      b) in                      c) with                      d) by
14. Muslims fast \_\_\_\_\_ the day in Ramadan.  
a) after                      b) before                      c) at                      d) during
15. Heba bought kahk from a \_\_\_\_\_.  
a) bakery                      b) zoo                      c) school                      d) park
16. My \_\_\_\_\_-grandma is my grandma's mother.  
a) small                      b) little                      c) great                      d) short

3

**Read and complete the text with words from the box.**

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من المربع.

great - sunset - Ramadan - fast - Shawwal

Eid Al-Fitr is a Muslim festival. The month before Eid is called  
 1) ..... Muslims 2) ..... during the day. This means  
 they don't eat or drink until 3) ..... Ramadan is a time to  
 help other people. It's a 4) ..... month.

-

**Read and complete the text with words from the box.**

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من المربع.

sang swam - play - remember - caught

Last year, we went to the beach. We 1) ..... in the water,  
 which was deep and blue. We 2) ..... a song. My grandpa  
 3) ..... lots of fish. We felt happy. It was a day to 4) .....  
 We will go again soon.

-

**Read and complete the text with words from the box.**

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من المربع.

bottle - a slice chocolate - bar - cookies

I had fun at the party. I drank some juice. I only had 1) .....  
 of cake. I ate a packet of 2) ..... and a piece of cheese.  
 I ate a bar of 3) ..... After that, I was thirsty so I had  
 a 4) ..... of water.

#### 4 Read the text and answer the questions. اقرأ النص واجب عن الاسئلة.

In many countries, people celebrate Christmas. It is a special festival. People meet together to celebrate. People decorate Christmas trees at Christmas. These trees are always green. The trees represent new life. People decorate the trees with lights, colored balls, and stars.

##### A) Choose the correct word.

- 1) The Christmas trees are always
  - a) red      b) yellow      c) green      d) pink
- 2) People decorate the trees with colored
  - a) dolls      b) eggs      c) kites      d) balls

##### B) Answer the following questions

- 3) What is the main idea of the text?
- 4) Why do people meet together?

#### - Read the text and answer the questions. اقرأ النص واجب عن الاسئلة.

Last weekend we went to Damietta to see Grandma and Grandpa who live by the sea. We swam in the water. It was deep and blue. We saw lots of fish and an octopus. to Grandpa caught a fish. We ate it and had a healthy dessert. We saw some old photos and sang a song. We felt happy. It was a day to remember. We like to go there again.

##### A) Choose the correct word.

- 1) Last weekend we went to
  - a) Giza      b) Damietta      c) Cairo      d) Luxor
- 2) The underlined word "by" means
  - a) next to      b) under      c) up      d) in

##### E) Answer the following questions

- 3) How was the water?
- 4) What did Grandpa catch?

## Unit (8)

5

Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

اقرأ واكتب الشكل الصحيح للكلمة(s) بين الأقواس

1. They (eat) pizza yesterday.
2. My father (catch) a lot of fish last Friday.
3. Last night we (see) old videos.
4. What did you (bought)?
5. I (drink) a bottle of juice yesterday.
6. Last year I (swim) in the river.
7. My father (catch) a train to Aswan two days ago.
8. I went to the beach last year. It (be) fun!
9. I (go) to bed at 8 o'clock last night.
10. I didn't (sang) a song in class today.

6

Punctuate the following sentences. ضع علامات الترقيم كما يلي:

- 1) muslims fast during Ramadan
- 2) we eat kahk to celebrate Eid Al-Fitr

7

Write a paragraph of **EIGHTEEN (18) words** about:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (18) كلمة عن:

**Ramadan**

Guiding words:

( before Eid - fast - don't eat )

**A day to remember**

Guiding words:

( grandpa's farm - fields - animals )



## What makes us special

## Party games ألعاب جماعية

|                |                       |                 |                  |
|----------------|-----------------------|-----------------|------------------|
| musical chairs | لعبة الكرسي الموسيقية | pass the parcel | لعبة تمرير الطرد |
| hide and seek  | لعبة الاختباء والبحث  | rope pulling    | لعبة شد الحبل    |

## Festivals احتفالات غير عادية

|                |                    |                  |                        |
|----------------|--------------------|------------------|------------------------|
| Cheese rolling | مهرجان دحرجة الجبن | La Tomatina      | مهرجان العرشق بالطماطم |
| Kite festival  | مهرجان طائرة الورق | Chinese New Year | أول السنة الصينية      |

## Egyptian food الطعام المصري

|                     |          |        |      |           |             |
|---------------------|----------|--------|------|-----------|-------------|
| Ful Medames (beans) | فول مدمن | garlic | ثوم  | olive oil | زيت الزيتون |
| basbousa            | بسبوسة   | syrup  | شراب | semolina  | سميد        |

## Others كلمات أخرى

|             |            |                |                |
|-------------|------------|----------------|----------------|
| present     | هدية       | seeker         | الباحث         |
| traditional | تقليدي     | proud of       | فخور بـ        |
| hospitable  | مضيف، كريم | special        | خاص / مميز     |
| famous for  | مشهور بـ   | region         | منطقة          |
| wrap        | يغلف       | unwrap         | يفتح           |
| winner      | فائز       | invitation     | دعوة           |
| player      | لاعب       | birthday party | حفلة عيد ميلاد |
| national    | قومي       | guest          | ضيف            |
| history     | تاريخ      | address        | عنوان          |

# General Activities

1

Listen and circle the correct answer.

a b c **d**

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة.

- In **Egypt** we make a lot of movies.  
a) Egypt b) China c) France d) USA
- We have **doctors** who won important prizes.  
a) teachers b) authors c) doctors d) pilots
- We love **drinks** in Egypt.  
a) clothes b) food c) sports d) drinks
- Ferial Abdelaziz a famous **karate** player.  
a) football b) handball c) volleyball d) karate

2

Listen and circle the correct answer.

a b c **d**

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة.

- We all love to give **money**.  
a) gifts b) prizes c) presents d) money
- We **throw** presents.  
a) wrap b) buy c) send d) throw
- In this game **rectangle** sit in a **triangle**.  
a) square b) circle c) rectangle d) triangle
- The player who unwraps the present **keeps** it.  
a) breaks b) buys c) throws d) keeps

3

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة من a, b, c أو d.

- Ali won the game. He is the **winner**.  
a) winner b) loser c) player d) actor
- Ful Medames is a famous Egyptian **game**.  
a) sport b) food c) color d) game
- Egyptians are very **hospitable**.  
a) unkind b) helpless c) hospitable d) unfriendly

- Egypt is famous \_\_\_\_\_ its history  
 a) for                      b) in                      c) on                      d) at
- Basbousa is very \_\_\_\_\_ with syrup  
 a) sour                      b) spicy                      c) salty                      d) sweet
- Alia's dress is \_\_\_\_\_. We all love it  
 a) helpful                      b) beautiful                      c) careful                      d) painful
- Those tools are very \_\_\_\_\_ for fixing our door  
 a) painful                      b) beautiful                      c) careful                      d) useful
- Learning about Egypt is \_\_\_\_\_. It has an amazing history  
 a) painful                      b) careful                      c) wonderful                      d) colorful
- We should be \_\_\_\_\_ of our beautiful country  
 a) angry                      b) sad                      c) proud                      d) short
- Everything was red in the \_\_\_\_\_ Festival  
 a) Kite                      b) Chinese                      c) La Tomatina                      d) Cheese
- When we \_\_\_\_\_ a present, we cover it with lots of paper  
 a) open                      b) wrap                      c) unwrap                      d) listen
12. I like to fly \_\_\_\_\_  
 a) balls                      b) kites                      c) dolls                      d) tomatoes
- Many \_\_\_\_\_ come to visit Egypt every year  
 a) trucks                      b) roads                      c) visitors                      d) planes
- People who write movies and stories are called \_\_\_\_\_  
 a) teachers                      b) doctors                      c) players                      d) authors
15. I hurt my leg. It's very \_\_\_\_\_ !  
 a) careful                      b) beautiful                      c) painful                      d) useful
16. About 90% of Egypt is \_\_\_\_\_  
 a) rivers                      b) desert                      c) forests                      d) ice

3

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من القرب

Our food can be described with one word: 1) ! The  
 most famous food is 2) Medames, beans cooked  
 very slowly, 3) with lots of olive oil and 4) .

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من القرب

How to start to play musical chairs. Put out some 1)  
 If you have 6 players, you only need 2) chairs. You can  
 play some 3) . When the music stops, everyone  
 sits down. The player without the chair is 4) .

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من القرب

There are many festivals around the world. The Kite festival is  
 to fly different shapes of 1) . In 2) rolling  
 festival, they start running and 3) . In La Tomatina  
 festival, people throw 4) at each other. Everything  
 is red.

4

Egypt is famous for its history. We have authors like Nagib Mahfouz and Basbousa. We have authors who won important prizes. We have karate players like Ferial Abdelaziz.

A) Choose the correct answer.

The word "famous" means

- sad      well known      unkind      unhappy  
won important prizes.  
Authors      Students      Chefs      Teachers

B) Answer the following questions.

What is Egypt famous for?

Who is a famous karate player?

When we get together with our family and friends to celebrate something, the children often play games. Musical chairs is an interesting game. You can run but be ready to sit! If you have 6 players, you only need 5 chairs. After that, play some music. The players run around the chairs. When the music stops, everyone sits down. The player without a chair is out. Take away one chair and play again.

A) Choose the correct answer.

The player without a chair is the

- a) first      b) second      c) winner      d) loser

In the musical chairs game, the chairs should be \_\_\_\_\_ than players.

- a) more      b) most      c) fewer      d) little

E) Answer the following questions.

How many chairs do you need for 7 players in the musical chairs?

What is the general idea of the text?



## Unit (9)

5

Read and complete the sentences.

اقرأ واكمل الجمل التالية

1. Sara's necklace is **beautiful**.
2. Adam is very **helpful**. He helped me carry the bags.
3. Be **careful** when you cross the street.
4. Her dress has red, blue and green stripes. It's very **colorful**.
5. I hurt my finger. It's very **painful**.
6. Mona **wore** a nice dress last night.
7. My father **gave** me a present last month.
8. I **didn't** go to school yesterday.
9. Hend **won** the race in 2015.
10. I **flew** my kite last weekend.

6

Put the following in the correct form.

ضع التالي في الشكل الصحيح

1) sara's necklace is beautiful

2) adam is very helpful

7

Write a paragraph about the following topic.

اكتب

فقرة (شالبة من ١٨) كلمة عن:

Playing games

Guiding words:

( have fun - friends - respect rules )

Your birthday

Guiding words:

( 3<sup>rd</sup> May - house - cake )

## Unit (10)

## I enjoy my life

### Social Media

|               |            |
|---------------|------------|
| cell phone    | tablet     |
| password      | message    |
| copy          | chat       |
| presentation  | chameleon  |
| log in / into | bully      |
| contact       | have fun   |
| online        | opinion    |
| tag           | neighbours |
| unhealthy     | unhappy    |
| pros          | good for   |
| cons          | bad for    |

### (+) Pros of social media

- You can have fun.
- You can find information for your research / homework
- You can learn interesting things.

### (-) Cons of social media

- Some people can bully you.
- People you don't know can contact you.
- People can take your personal information.

### Language Giving advice:

Subject + should +

الموضوع + يجب ( )

I only give my phone number to my friends.

Subject + should +

الموضوع + يجب ( )

We shouldn't sleep late.

# General Activities

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

## 1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة.

- Many people say that computer games are \_\_\_\_\_ for children.  
a) good      b) bad      c) healthy      d) useful
- Children can spend many hours on their \_\_\_\_\_.  
a) books      b) stories      c) computers      d) cellphones
- Children look at the \_\_\_\_\_ of computers.  
a) keyboard      b) screen      c) mouse      d) hard
- Good children go \_\_\_\_\_.  
a) inside      b) indoors      c) outside      d) into homes

## 2 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة.

- Noha researched for her \_\_\_\_\_ on her tablet.  
a) homework      b) project      c) test      d) presentation
- Noha logged \_\_\_\_\_ some websites.  
a) with      b) at      c) by      d) into
- She wanted to choose a \_\_\_\_\_ for her bedroom.  
a) bed      b) desk      c) color      d) carpet
- Noha was \_\_\_\_\_.  
a) sad      b) happy      c) nervous      d) angry

## 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة

- \_\_\_\_\_ animals like to change their color.  
a) Chameleons      b) Rabbits      c) Squirrels      d) Pandas
- Remember to be \_\_\_\_\_ when you give information.  
a) delicious      b) respectful      c) interesting      d) amazing
- I don't want anyone to know about it. It's a \_\_\_\_\_.  
a) secret      b) season      c) class      d) safe

## Final Revision

They logged into the library \_\_\_\_\_ to get information  
 \_\_\_\_\_ phone \_\_\_\_\_ number \_\_\_\_\_ website \_\_\_\_\_ d) class

We use social media to \_\_\_\_\_ ideas  
 a) chat \_\_\_\_\_ b) share \_\_\_\_\_ c) sure \_\_\_\_\_ d) eat

Using modern devices has \_\_\_\_\_ and cons  
 \_\_\_\_\_ cans \_\_\_\_\_ pros \_\_\_\_\_ online \_\_\_\_\_ c) coins

I should use \_\_\_\_\_ passwords  
 a) tall \_\_\_\_\_ b) bad \_\_\_\_\_ c) strong \_\_\_\_\_ d) weak

It's \_\_\_\_\_ to play computer games for a long time  
 \_\_\_\_\_ healthy \_\_\_\_\_ unhealthy \_\_\_\_\_ good \_\_\_\_\_ c) perfect

I use \_\_\_\_\_ media when I go online.  
 \_\_\_\_\_ book \_\_\_\_\_ history \_\_\_\_\_ social \_\_\_\_\_ b) local

I can \_\_\_\_\_ my friend in photos online.  
 a) talk \_\_\_\_\_ b) tag \_\_\_\_\_ c) play \_\_\_\_\_ d) match

I need to look at lots of \_\_\_\_\_ and find some information.  
 \_\_\_\_\_ air \_\_\_\_\_ friends \_\_\_\_\_ websites \_\_\_\_\_ c) clouds

I sent a \_\_\_\_\_ to my friend to help me.  
 \_\_\_\_\_ message \_\_\_\_\_ school \_\_\_\_\_ color \_\_\_\_\_ b) hospital

Some people can \_\_\_\_\_ you online  
 a) take \_\_\_\_\_ b) pull \_\_\_\_\_ c) bully \_\_\_\_\_ d) push

The story is \_\_\_\_\_ . I don't like it  
 \_\_\_\_\_ interesting \_\_\_\_\_ amazing \_\_\_\_\_ boring \_\_\_\_\_ c) fun

Chameleons can change their \_\_\_\_\_  
 a) color \_\_\_\_\_ b) clothes \_\_\_\_\_ c) shoes \_\_\_\_\_ d) tails

I should turn my phone \_\_\_\_\_ at night  
 a) on \_\_\_\_\_ b) off \_\_\_\_\_ c) at \_\_\_\_\_ d) in

## Unit (10)

5

أمر واكتب الشكل الصحيح للكلمات التي بين القوس

You should **being** safe online.

You shouldn't **spoke** to strangers on the internet.

You should **has** a strong password.

You **shouldn't** speak to people you know.

You should **turns** your phone off at night.

You can **shares** photos on social media.

You **should** give your password to everyone.

I lost my shoes. I'm **happy**.

Eating too much candy is **healthy**.

I think you should **ate** healthy food.

6

امر علامات الرسم للتعلم اللاحق

we check our cell phones every day

do you like computer games

7

## EIGHTEEN 18

اكتب فقرة إثنائية من ( ١٨ ) كلمة عن:

### Computer games

Guiding words

interesting tablet on

Guiding words:

contact personal password

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك ان يتعامل مع مثل هذه الاسئلة



## Unit (11)

## What can we do?

### Vocabulary

|       |                 |                       |
|-------|-----------------|-----------------------|
| metro | transportation  | shocked               |
| bus   | ambulance       | fell over             |
| plane | طائرة rail      | سقط حديد left         |
| boat  | قارب in a hurry | في عجلة من أمره right |
| train | chemicals       | by bus                |
| taxi  | on foot         | through air           |

### Phonics

cr

tr



ash



crowd



crosswalk



train



truck

### Language

- You **need** a **seat belt** in your car.

You **must** look left and right.



You can **turn left** and turn right.



You can't **park** here.



You **mustn't** wait for the green light.

# General Activities

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

## 1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة

- Cities have many  
a) plants      b) cars      c) planes      d) trains
- Cars make      pollution.  
a) water      b) land      c) air      d) soil
- We can't always see the      , but they are dangerous.  
a) chemicals      b) cars      c) trains      d) ships
- Air pollution is very      to us.  
a) important      b) healthy      c) useful      d) dangerous

## 2 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة

- My favorite transportation is a  
a) train      b) car      c) ship      d) bus
- I love traveling on  
a) water      b) road      c) air      d) space
- I enjoy watching the  
a) gardens      b) plants      c) fish      d) sea
- All my      like traveling by ship  
a) family      b) friends      c) neighbors      d) team

## 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة

- My brother comes to school      car.  
a) by      b) on      c) at      d) in
- We go to the airport to travel by  
a) train      b) car      c) boat      d) plane
- Stop here and wait for a      light.  
a) green      b) pink      c) red      d) yellow

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة

A train moves on a

- a) air      b) road      c) rail      d) water

Road signs give you information about the road.

- unnecessary      important      weak      unimportant

The travels through the air.

- ship      metro      taxi      plane

Cars make air pollution. They put into the air.

- metals      woods      stars      chemicals

When I travel by plane, I go through the

- a) air      b) road      c) water      d) land

My dad has a in his car to drive safely.

- chair      helmet      seat belt      bike

10. A boat moves on

- a) road      b) rail      c) sky      d) water

I love traveling by air. My favorite transportation is

- a) car      b) plane      c) ship      d) bus

You need to look left and before you cross the road.

- right      good      green      black

You need a green light to the road

- play      cross      send      visit

When Ali hurt his foot, Ahmed called for an

- motorbike      bus      plane      ambulance

When we the polluted air, we cough and feel sick.

- a) drink      b) breathe      c) hear      d) eat

16. Ali was late, so he was a hurry.

- a) on      b) in      c) by      d) at

## Unit (11)

### 3 Read and complete the text with words from the box.

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من المربع.

light - right - stop - road - left

We need many important things to be safe on the road. We need a **1)** light on our bikes. We need a **2)** stop in our cars. We need a green **3)** light to cross the road. We also need to look left and **4)** right.

### 4 Read and complete the text with words from the box.

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من المربع.

road - cat - ship - plane - water

I 'love travel' very much. I can travel **1)** by plane through the air. When I travel **2)** by ship on the water, I can see many beautiful things. I can **3)** see many things. I can **4)** move on a road.

### 5 Read and complete the text with words from the box.

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من المربع.

pollution - air - clean - water - healthy

Air pollution is very dangerous for us. We can get sick because of the **1)** pollution in the air. We can **2)** get sick if cars will not be clean. We can **3)** go to school by car. We can **4)** go to school by car, too.

4

أما البقية فليكن من المصطلحات

Many countries try to stop air pollution in their cities. Cars make air pollution. In London, England, parents don't drive children to school. The children walk or cycle to school. Cars do not go near schools. In Shenzhen, China, they have electric buses. These buses do not make air pollution.

A) Choose the correct word

- 1) In \_\_\_\_\_, parents do not drive children to school.  
 China      England      Egypt      2) America
- 2) Cars make \_\_\_\_\_ pollution.  
 air      water      land      3) sight

B) Answer the following questions

Which transportation make air pollution?

Mention two solutions to reduce air pollution.

أما البقية فليكن من المصطلحات

Last week I heard Dr Helen Walker talking about air pollution. I liked her ideas and I did some research. I talked to my family about what we can do. We decided to change some things as a family. Dad now goes to work with his friend in the same car. Mom takes the bus to work. She doesn't drive. I now go to school by bike. My sister, Noura, walks to school because her school is nearer.

A) Choose the correct word

- 1) I talked to my \_\_\_\_\_ about what we can do.  
 teachers      family      friends      2) sisters
- 2) I now go to school by \_\_\_\_\_.  
 car      train      bike      plane

B) Answer the following questions

What was Dr Helen talking about?

Summarize the text in one sentence.



5

Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

اقرأ واكتب الشكل الصحيح للكلمات التي بين الأقواس

1. You (need to) a seat belt in your car.
2. I need to (bought) a present for my mother.
3. You need (in) get some information for your homework.
4. We (need to) safe roads.
5. You (must) look left and right.
6. You must (must) for the green light before crossing the road.
7. You must (mustn't) road signs.
8. We (mustn't) wear seat belt in the car.
9. You mustn't (can) on the road.
10. You must (wore) a helmet on the bike.

6

Punctuate the following sentences.

امسح النقاط وضع علامات الترقيم

1) why is Seleem meeting people

2) what did Hany do yesterday

7

Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words about:

اكتب فقرة الثمانية عشر (18) كلمة عن:

A story you read

Guiding words:

( walk - school - crosswalk )

Road safety

Guiding words:

( listen for cars - crosswalk - seat belt )

## English language performance tasks

### المهام الأدائية

#### A traditional dish

Egypt is famous for many wonderful traditional dishes like  
(Ful Medames - Basbousa)

⇒ **Write about:**

The traditional dish you like most.

⇒ **Draw you traditional dish.**

#### A trip with your friends

It's end of year holiday. You want to do many activities. Some of your friends want to go to the beach. Some want to go to the museum. Some want to go to the zoo.

⇒ **Write about:**

The activity you want to do during the trip.

⇒ **Draw what you can see/ do in these places.**



## ★ Festivals

You are celebrating one of the festivals with your family and friends

⇒ **Write about:**

- What do you do during it?
- How do you celebrate it?
- What do you eat during it?

⇒ **Draw a symbol for your favorite festival.**

## ★ Invitation

You want to invite your friends to your birthday party

⇒ **Write an invitation including:**

(address - time and place - why to invite - what to wear - what to bring)

⇒ **Draw the invitation cover.**

## A leaflet

You want to help your friends know how to be safe online. You make a leaflet about "How to stay safe online"

### ⇒ Write about:

- What should you do online to be safe?
- What shouldn't you do?

Give advice to your friends

### ⇒ Draw the leaflet you will share with your friends.

## Mother's Day

It's "Mother's Day". You want to make a present for your mom. You have some old things at home that you can recycle.

### ⇒ Write about:

- What things will you use?
- What will you do? (The steps)
- What is the product?

### ⇒ Draw a picture of the present you make.

# Exam (1)

بعض الاستماع في بداية الكتاب

## 1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Last week we went to .....  
a) Aswan      b) Giza      c) Cairo      d) Damietta
2. Grandma and grandpa live by the .....  
a) sea      b) village      c) tower      d) pyramids
3. We saw a lots of .....  
a) cats      b) fish      c) birds      d) plants
4. Grandpa ..... a fish.  
a) bought      b) ate      c) caught      d) made

## 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. I bought a ..... of water from the shop yesterday.  
a) bottle      b) packet      c) slice      d) bar
2. We should be ..... of our beautiful country.  
a) pain      b) proud      c) care      d) cloud

## 3 Read and complete the text with words from the box.

Nile - green - dessert - region - desert

Many people think that Egypt is only a 1) ..... . It's true but we also have ..... lands. Near the 3) ....., it is green and beautiful. There are mountains in the south and east. It even snows in Sinai 4) .....



#### 4 Read the following text then answer the questions.

I'm Ahmed. I live in a big city in Egypt with my family. The city is always noisy and crowded. It has a lot of pretty, bright lights but smoke and noise are everywhere. In summer, we visit our grandpa in the country. It is always quiet and clean. There are a lot of trees and grass. Life is slow. We love the country rather than the city.

##### A) Choose the correct answer

- Ahmed visits grandpa in the  
a) spring      b) winter      c) summer      d) fall
- The city is always  
a) slow      b) quiet      c) noisy      d) bad

##### B) Answer the following questions.

- How is life in the country?
- What does Ahmed like more, the city or the country?

#### 5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

- Yesterday I didn't \_\_\_\_\_ to school.
- I \_\_\_\_\_ (keep) my password secret.
- When you go online, you need to be \_\_\_\_\_.
- How \_\_\_\_\_ (many) you go to the library yesterday?

#### 6 Punctuate the following sentence.

what was on the table

#### 7 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTEEN (18) words about.

A festival we celebrate in Egypt

##### Guiding elements:

(Name of the festival - When is it? - What do people do, eat and wear?)

## Exam (2)

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

**1** Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. The \_\_\_\_\_ is very important.  
a) Nile                      b) farm                      c) station                      d) airport
2. The Nile brings life to \_\_\_\_\_.  
a) France                      b) China                      c) Egypt                      d) India
3. The Nile is the \_\_\_\_\_ river in the world.  
a) shortest                      b) longest                      c) fastest                      d) tallest
4. The Nile has \_\_\_\_\_ branches.  
a) one                      b) two                      c) three                      d) four

**2** Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. You can \_\_\_\_\_ photos online.  
a) say                      b) share                      c) write                      d) cook
2. We travel on \_\_\_\_\_ by ship or boat.  
a) water                      b) rail                      c) road                      d) street

**3** Read and complete the text with words from the box.

store - gas - shopping - water - electricity

Our city has a shopping area, but I don't like 1) \_\_\_\_\_.

Dad worked in a shoe 2) \_\_\_\_\_. We drove 3) \_\_\_\_\_.

cars in the past but now we have a car that uses 4) \_\_\_\_\_.

#### 4 Read the following text then answer the questions.

I remember my first day of school. I was six years old. I was very nervous. I didn't want to go to school. I put on a blue T-shirt, gray pants and black shoes. Mom and I walked to school. I studied math and played games; it was fun.

##### Q1 Choose the correct answer.

- 1 In his first day of school, he was \_\_\_\_\_ years old  
 a) six                      b) seven                      c) eight                      d) five
- 2 He walked to school with his \_\_\_\_\_  
 a) brother                      b) dad                      c) mom                      d) sister

##### Answer the following questions

- 3 What clothes did he put on?
- 4 What subject did he study?

#### 5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

- 1 There \_\_\_\_\_ (be) no cars in the past.
- 2 You need to \_\_\_\_\_ (look) left and right.
- 3 What games did you \_\_\_\_\_ (play) yesterday?
- 4 You should \_\_\_\_\_ (sleep) early.

#### 6 Punctuate the following sentence.

i don't go to school on Friday

#### 7 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTEEN (18) words about:

Your day

Guiding words:

(get up - home - play games)

# Exam (3)

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

## 1 Listen and circle the correct answer. a b c d

- The month before Eid is called  
a) Ramadan    b) Shawwal    c) March    d) October
- Muslims \_\_\_\_\_ during the day in Ramadan.  
a) drink    b) fast    c) eat    d) sleep
- "Fast" means not to eat or \_\_\_\_\_ until sunset.  
a) make    b) run    c) sleep    d) drink
- In Ramadan, people think about the \_\_\_\_\_ year.  
a) next    b) following    c) past    d) present

## 2 Choose the correct answer from a b c d

- Chameleons are the same color as the \_\_\_\_\_ where they are.  
a) place    b) air    c) kind    d) world
- I \_\_\_\_\_ into the library website to get information.  
a) created    b) logged    c) changed    d) wrote

## 3 Read and complete the text with words from the box

wonderful - visitors - hospitable - bad - energy

More than half of Egyptians are under the age of 30.

Egyptians are full of 1) \_\_\_\_\_. They are helpful to each other.  
They are very friendly to 2) \_\_\_\_\_ and guests. They are very  
3) \_\_\_\_\_ people. Egyptian people are very 4) \_\_\_\_\_.

4

Our world has a big problem because of the **air** pollution. Experts talk about ideas to stop this problem. People must help experts to solve this problem. For example, we should plant more trees. We can have energy-saving light bulbs in our apartments and use public transportation.

**A) Choose the correct answer**

1. We should use \_\_\_\_\_ transportation.  
 a) more      b) less      c) public      d) crowded
2. Experts talk about ideas to \_\_\_\_\_ pollution.  
 a) help      b) plant      c) see      d) stop

**B) Answer the following questions**

- What problem does the world have?  
 How can people help the experts?

5

1. You should \_\_\_\_\_ your room.  
 2. We \_\_\_\_\_ study English yesterday.  
 3. I didn't \_\_\_\_\_ to go back to school.  
 4. You can't \_\_\_\_\_ here.

6

**Punctuate the following sentence**

which is your favorite transportation

7

**EIGHTEEN 18**

**The Nile**

**Guiding words**

**(the longest - two branches)**



# Exam ( )

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1

a b c or d

Grandpa's village was very

quiet

noisy

crowded

d) dirty

There were no

In the past.

trains

cars

buses

d) planes

Grandpa was

when he buried the box of memories.

ten

nine

eight

d) six

Now, my grandpa is very

fast

strong

young

d) old

2

a b c or d

Mona was very tired, she looked a bit

green

black

white

d) pink

Tamer drank a,

of milk yesterday.

bottle

bar

piece

d) slice

3

Read and complete the sentences on the box.

Last week, we went to visit my grandpa. He lives by the

- 1) We went by car. We swam and made castles. We
- saw lots of 2) . We 3) lots of songs. We
- 4) ice cream. We were very happy.

#### 4 Read the following text then answer the questions

Our Egyptian food can be described with one word: wonderful! The most famous food is Ful Medames, beans cooked very slowly, served with lots of olive oil and garlic. When you want something sweet, you should try basbousa, a thin, sweet semolina cake with syrup. Egyptian people are very hospitable.

#### A) Choose the correct answer.

- Ful Medames is \_\_\_\_\_ with olive oil and garlic.  
a) drunk      b) **served**      c) played      d) celebrated
- The underlined word "wonderful" means very \_\_\_\_\_.  
a) ugly      b) bad      c) **good**      d) cold

#### B) Answer the following questions

- What can you eat when you want something sweet?
- Summarize the text in one sentence.

#### 5 Read and write the correct form of the words in brackets

- My mother \_\_\_\_\_ a delicious cake yesterday. (make)
- I didn't \_\_\_\_\_ my homework yesterday. (do)
- There \_\_\_\_\_ a shopping area in my village last year. (is)
- We \_\_\_\_\_ a helmet on our bikes. (need to)

#### 6 Punctuate the following sentence

mona had ice cream for dessert

#### 7 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTEEN 18 words about

#### Air pollution

#### Guiding words:

(air pollution - walk - cycle - solar power)

# Exam (5)

يتم الاستماع إلى هذه النكات

**1** Listen and circle the correct answer from **a, b, c, or d.**

- 1 Eid Al-Fitr is a muslim .  
 a) festival      b) holiday      c) month      d) party
2. It happens in the      day of Shawwal.  
 a) first      b) second      c) third      d) fifth
- 3 Many people make      to celebrate Eid Al-Fitr.  
 a) fish      b) kahk      c) egg      d) chicken
4. People go to the mosque and      time with their families.  
 a) play      b) stay      c) spend      d) take

**2** Choose the correct answer from **a, b, c, or d.**

- 1 I want to      my cousin and chat with him.  
 a) read      b) speak      c) talk      d) message
- 2 I wear the      on my head when I ride my bike.  
 a) toy      b) watch      c) clothes      d) helmet

**3** Read and complete the text with words from the box.

road   look - blue - green - need

It's important to be safe on the road. You 1)      a helmet on your bike. You need a 2,      light to cross the road. You need to 3)      left and right before you cross the 4)      .

## 4 Read the text.

There are different festivals around the world. In China, the New Year festival is the most important. It starts on 1<sup>st</sup> February and ends on 11<sup>th</sup>. La Tomatina is the strangest festival in Spain. People fight each other with tomatoes. Everything is red. They play and laugh. They wear old clothes. In Egypt, we have Sham El-Nessim which is a very special festival for Egyptian people in the beginning of spring.

## A) Choose the correct answer.

- Sham El-Nessim is celebrated in  
 a Spain      b China      c Egypt      d India
- \_\_\_\_\_ is the most important festival in China  
 a Eld Al-Fitr      b The New Year  
 c Sham El-Nessim      d La Tomatina

## B) Answer the following questions.

- What do people do in 'La Tomatina'?
- When does the New Year festival start?

## 5 Read and write.

- What \_\_\_\_\_ do you do yesterday?
- Osama \_\_\_\_\_ walk to school last Monday.
- We must \_\_\_\_\_ followed road signs.
- You should \_\_\_\_\_ ate healthy food.

## 6 Complete the text.

I love travelling on water.

7 Write a paragraph. **EIGHTEEN 18**

Great-grandma's birthday party

Guiding words.

(great-grandma - seventy - picnic - games - cousins - songs)

# Exam ( )

نهر النيل في مدينة لكتاب

1

a b c d

Many people say that computer are bad for children.

games movies plays tools

can spend many hours on their computers and tablets.

Babies Parents Children Friends

Parents say this is not for their children.

kind healthy bad friendly

4. Parents are

happy excited sad bad

2

a b c d

We are of our beautiful country.

hard good proud bad

That shirt has red, blue and green stripes. It's very

colorful helpful useful painful

3

with words from

street - plant

My father's house was in a village in Aswan. The 1) was quiet in the past. Now there are lots of cars and trucks. My father and his friends 2) football on this street. Now there isn't enough 3). When my father was a child, he helped his friends to 4) a small tree on the side of the street. Now the tree is very big and beautiful. It's very nice.



4

Read the text and answer the questions.

My name is Ahmed. I remember my first day of school. I was six years old. I wore my black shoes and blue pants. I carried my backpack. I was very nervous. I want to play with toys. I didn't want to go to school.

A) Choose the correct answer.

- Ahmed wore \_\_\_\_\_ shoes.  
a) brown      b) red      c) black      d) blue
- Ahmed was \_\_\_\_\_.  
a) happy      b) nervous      c) sad      d) excited

B) Answer the following questions.

- How old was Ahmed when he went to school?
- Did Ahmed want to go to school?

5

Put the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

- You must \_\_\_\_\_ followed road signs.
- Yesterday, we \_\_\_\_\_ eat a chocolate cake.
- Ahmed is ill. He needs to \_\_\_\_\_ went to hospital.
- You should \_\_\_\_\_ saw the doctor.

6

Put the correct form of the sentence.

i can t go to bed at 9 o'clock.

7

Write a paragraph of **EIGHTEEN (18)** words about:

You want to invite your friends to your birthday party

Guiding words:

(music - my house - invitation - next Monday)

## Exam (7)

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

### 1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

- My great-grandma was \_\_\_\_\_ years old.  
a) 60                      b) 70                      c) 80                      d) 90
- All my family \_\_\_\_\_ together to celebrate.  
a) sang                      b) came                      c) ran                      d) swam
- The family ate \_\_\_\_\_, meat, fish, and fruit.  
a) beans                      b) kahk                      c) eggs                      d) salad
- The family had \_\_\_\_\_ cake, too.  
a) muffin                      b) ful                      c) chocolate                      d) noodles

### 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

- We're having a spring \_\_\_\_\_ at the school.  
a) festival                      b) Eid                      c) fast                      d) class
- There are lots of trees in the \_\_\_\_\_.  
a) desert                      b) river                      c) building                      d) forest

### 3 Read and complete the text with words from the box.

desert - river - cold - water - hot

Egypt is a beautiful country. It has a long 1) \_\_\_\_\_.

We can get fresh 2) \_\_\_\_\_ from it. Egypt also has a big

3) \_\_\_\_\_. The desert climate is very 4) \_\_\_\_\_.

#### 4 Read the following text then answer the questions.

The Nile river is very important in Egypt. It's the longest river in the world. It's about 6,675 kilometers long. The Nile has two branches in Egypt. The Nile is the home for different kinds of animals. We should keep the Nile clean. The Nile brings us fresh water. Without the Nile there is no life. We all need the Nile to live.

##### A) Choose the correct answer

- The Nile is the \_\_\_\_\_ river in the world.  
a) longest      b) tallest      c) shortest      d) long
- There are \_\_\_\_\_ branches of the Nile in Egypt.  
a) one      b) three      c) two      d) four

##### B) Answer the following questions

- How long is the Nile?
- What's the Nile home for?

#### 5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

- They \_\_\_\_\_ (amuse) in the zoo yesterday.
- Rehab \_\_\_\_\_ (swim) in the sea last weekend.
- Our food is \_\_\_\_\_ (taste) in Egypt.
- We should \_\_\_\_\_ (be) proud of our country.

#### 6 Punctuate the following sentence.

my sisters have yellow hats

#### 7 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTEEN (18) words about:

Sham El-Nessim

Guiding words:

(celebrate - eggs - parks)

# Exam (8)

نص السموع في نهاية الكتاب

## 1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

- Grandma's mom and dad drove gas .  
a) cars      b) buses      c) planes      d) ships
- Gas cars were .  
a) quiet      b) noisy      c) healthy      d) cleaner
- Now we have cars.  
a) gas      b) plastic      c) electric      d) metal
- Electric cars are much and quieter.  
a) slower      b) longer      c) shorter      d) cleaner

## 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

- I use my to do my homework online.  
a) tablet      b) book      c) pen      d) notebook
- My sister went to the to take the plane to London.  
a) station      b) airport      c) room      d) school

## 3 Read and complete the text with words from the box.

special - spring - salted - winter - families

Sham El-Nessim is celebrated by Egyptians. It's a festival that celebrates the start of 1) . We eat green onions and 2) fish during Sham El-Nessim. We color boiled eggs. We go to the parks with our 3) to have picnics. We play in the park. Sham El-Nessim is a very 4) day.

4

Cell phones help us with our lives. A cell phone is a kind of telephones. It's a very device for us. They are of different colors. Through the cell phone, we get and send news, play games and communicate. Pupils can do their homework. They can do researches and find information about different animals.

A) Choose the correct answer.

1. The text is about

tablets      cell phones      computers      pens

2. The word "set it" means

good      bad      angry      sad

B) Answer the following questions

What can we do through the cell phone?

Who can use cell phones to do the homework?

5

We played and swim in the sea last year.

We should turn our phones off at night.

My mother baked a delicious cake yesterday.

You need to wear a helmet when you ride a bike.

6

egypt is famous for its history

7

UNIT 13

The River Nile

Guiding word:

(the longest river - home for)



# Exam (5)

بعض الاسماء في نهاية الكتاب

1

a b c d

- 1 Two years ago, we had a very special  
party festival ceremony holiday
- 2 My great-grandma was \_\_\_\_\_ years old.  
a) 70 b) 80 c) 90 d) 99
- 3 All my family came together to  
work study celebrate play
- 4 The family \_\_\_\_\_ chocolate cake.  
drank gave spent had

2

a b c d

- 1 Young Egyptian people are full of  
energy smoke cold plants
- 2 If you are not \_\_\_\_\_ on road, you will have an accident.  
useful careful colorful wonderful

3

Grandpa says that his mom and dad drove gas cars. They were very 1) \_\_\_\_\_. Our town had a 2) \_\_\_\_\_ area, but it was very old. My dad worked in a 3) \_\_\_\_\_ store on Saturdays. Our town is different now. It is more modern but more 4) \_\_\_\_\_.

4

**Read the following text then answer the questions.**

I love celebrating Sham El-Nessim with my family. It's Egypt's oldest festival as ancient Egyptians celebrated it too. Sham El-Nessim is in April. It comes the day after Coptic Easter. At Sham El-Nessim, the weather is usually nice, so we go to the park and eat lots of nice food. We also color eggs.

**A) Choose the correct answer**

1. People color \_\_\_\_\_ during the festival of Sham El-Nessim.  
a) potatoes      b) onions      c) eggs      d) fish
2. I celebrate Sham El-Nessim with my \_\_\_\_\_.  
a) friends      b) family      c) teachers      d) aunts

**B) Answer the following questions.**

3. When is Sham El-Nessim?
4. What is the weather like at Sham El-Nessim?

5

**Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.**

1. We \_\_\_\_\_ (go) to the beach yesterday.
2. We should \_\_\_\_\_ (turned) our phones off at night.
3. I \_\_\_\_\_ buy a new dress last week.
4. I need to \_\_\_\_\_ (looks) at many websites to find a lot of information for my homework.

6

**Punctuate the following sentence.**

what are the children doing

7

**Write a paragraph of about EIGHTEEN (18) words about:**

**Country and city life**

**Guiding words:**

(quiet - bright lights)

# Exam (10)

نحن الاستماع في بداية الكتاب

## 1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. The chameleon is a kind of  
a) reptiles      b) birds      c) fish      d) plants
2. They have amazing  
a) legs      b) eyes      c) arms      d) teeth
3. They can change their  
a) shapes      b) sizes      c) bodies      d) colors
4. They \_\_\_\_\_ insects and leaves.  
a) drink      b) change      c) eat      d) think

## 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. The River Nile has two \_\_\_\_\_ in Egypt.  
a) forests      b) villages      c) seas      d) branches
2. We need a \_\_\_\_\_ of water.  
a) piece      b) bottle      c) bar      d) slice

## 3 Read and complete the text with words from the box.

friends - in - by - foot - far

My name is Waleed. I go to school on 1) \_\_\_\_\_. I like walking because I can meet my 2) \_\_\_\_\_. My friend Adam goes to school 3) \_\_\_\_\_ bus. His house is 4) \_\_\_\_\_ from school.

#### 4 Read the text and answer the questions.

We should stop air pollution. We can have energy - saving light bulbs in our apartments. We can have many plants on our balcony. We decided to change some things as a family. Mom takes the bus to work. My brother walks to school because his school is near.

Choose the correct answer.

- The text is about how to  
a) stop air pollution    b) recycle    c) write    d) cook
- My brother's school isn't  
a) near    b) far    c) hot    d) low

Answer the following questions

- Mention two things to stop air pollution.
- How does mom go to work?

#### 5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

- You should keep your password secret
- I fall over and my friend helped me.
- You need to enter a password.
- Where did Aya go last year?

#### 6 Punctuate the following sentence.

hide and seek is a very old game

#### 7 Write a paragraph of about 100 words about:

Sham El-Nessim

Guiding words:

(park - play - salted fish - eggs - happy)

# Exam (11)

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

## 1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. It's important to be \_\_\_\_\_ online.  
a) safe                      b) dangerous    c) bad                      d) useless
2. You should keep your \_\_\_\_\_ secret.  
a) address                  b) password    c) number                  d) name
3. You \_\_\_\_\_ share your personal information.  
a) can                      b) should                  c) must                      d) shouldn't
4. You shouldn't \_\_\_\_\_ to be friends with people you don't know.  
a) share                      b) be                      c) accept                      d) keep

## 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Heba \_\_\_\_\_ the present to see what was inside.  
a) wrapped                  b) unwrapped    c) played                      d) sent
2. I played \_\_\_\_\_ with my cousins.  
a) foods                      b) games                  c) jobs                      d) drinks

## 3 Read and complete the text with words from the box.

bottle - cake - drank - ate - bar

I had fun at the party. I 1) \_\_\_\_\_ some juice. I only had a slice of 2) \_\_\_\_\_. I ate the packet of cookies and a piece of cheese. I ate a 3) \_\_\_\_\_ of chocolate. After that, I was thirsty so I had a 4) \_\_\_\_\_ of water.



#### 4 Read the following text then answer the questions.

Last week, we went to Damietta to see grandma and grandpa, who live by the sea. We swam in the sea which was deep and blue. We saw lots of fish. Grandpa caught a fish, which grandma made into a lovely dish. We ate the meal and had a healthy dessert.

#### A) Choose the correct answer.

- Last week, we went to  
a) Luxor      b) Cairo      c) Aswan      d) Damietta
- The dessert they had was  
a) healthy      b) unhealthy      c) kind      d) unkind

#### B) Answer the following questions.

- Why did you go to Damietta?
- What did grandpa catch?

#### 5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

- The village (is) very quiet when I lived here.
- Did Eman (does) her homework?
- You must (waited) for the green light to cross the road.
- You need (III) look left and right before crossing the road.

#### 6 Punctuate the following sentence.

I am making a presentation with mona

#### 7 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTEEN (18) words about:

Eid Al-Fitr

#### Guiding elements:

(When is Eid Al-Fitr? - How do we celebrate Eid Al-Fitr?)

# Exam (12)

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

## 1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

- Eid Al-Fitr is a Muslim .....  
a) festival      b) drink      c) food      d) game
- It comes in the ..... day of the 10<sup>th</sup> Islamic month.  
a) second      b) third      c) first      d) fourth
- People eat ..... to celebrate Eid Al-Fitr.  
a) fish      b) kahk      c) eggs      d) meat
- People say "....." to their friends.  
a) Eid Mubarak      b) Happy New Year  
c) Happy Birthday      d) Goodbye

## 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

- I hurt my leg. It's very .....  
a) helpful      b) beautiful      c) painful      d) colorful
- We can ..... the train at night.  
a) go      b) catch      c) run      d) swim

## 3 Read and complete the text with words from the box.

player - out - music - run - sports

My favorite party game is the "Musical chairs". We put some chairs, play some 1) ....., and the players 2) ..... around the chairs. When the music stops, everyone sits down and the 3) ..... without a chair is "4) ....."

#### 4 Read the text and answer the questions.

I am Reem. I went to the beach with my family on the weekend. We were sad because there was a lot of plastic trash from people's houses on the beach. I talked to my mom and she advised me to talk about the problem at school. I and my friends started to find information about beach clean up in different places. Then, we went to the beach again and collected all the plastic trash. The beach is now clean. Sea animals and birds can live in a clean place.

#### A) Choose the correct answer.

- The text is about
  - beach clean up
  - visiting Alexandria
  - Mother's Day
  - school
- Reem talked about the problem at
  - the beach
  - the club
  - school
  - home

#### B) Answer the following questions.

- Why were Reem and her family sad?
- What did Reem and her friends do?

#### 5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

- My mom (cooks) some vegetables last Sunday.
- We need to (used) energy-saving light bulbs.
- You (shouldn't) stay safe online.
- Heba (be) excited yesterday.

#### 6 Punctuate the following sentence.

how many branches does the Nile have

#### 7 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTEEN (18) words about:

Eid Al-Fitr

Guiding words:

(kahr - festival)



## Exam (13)

خاص بطلاب الأزهر الشريف

لنص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

### 1 Listen and choose the correct answer.

1. I put on a ..... T-shirt.  
a) green                      b) blue                      c) yellow                      d) red
2. My ..... drove me to school.  
a) dad                      b) mom                      c) brother                      d) sister
3. I was .....  
a) happy                      b) nervous                      c) excited                      d) beautiful

### 2 Read and complete the dialogue with words from the box.

chameleons - color - homework - are

- Mom: What 1) ..... you doing, Dalia?
- Dalia: I am doing my 2) .....
- Mom: What is it about?
- Dalia: It is about 3) .....
- Mom: What can they do?
- Dalia: They can change their 4) .....

### 3 Read the following text then answer the questions.

The Nile is the longest river in the world. The Nile has two branches. There are many people living near the Nile. The Nile is home for different kinds of fish, birds and turtles. One of the planet's largest reptiles, the Nile crocodile, lives in it.

#### A) Answer the following questions.

1. Where do many people live?

2. What is the Nile home for?

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.



**B) Choose the correct answer.**

3. The Nile is the ..... river in the world.  
a) shortest      b) longest      c) tallest      d) smallest
4. The Nile has ..... branches.  
a) two      b) one      c) four      d) three
5. The crocodile is a .....  
a) reptile      b) bird      c) human      d) plant

**4 Choose the correct answer.**

1. I drank a ..... of water yesterday.  
a) bar      b) slice      c) bottle      d) bowl
2. I go to school ..... foot.  
a) on      b) at      c) in      d) by
3. We should use a strong ..... to stay safe online.  
a) message      b) chat      c) password      d) search
4. We can ..... trees.  
a) plan      b) plants      c) planting      d) planted
5. My grandma ..... in a small village when she was young.  
a) live      b) lived      c) lives      d) living

**5 Reorder the words to make correct sentences.**

1. live - Where - mouse - did - the country - ?

2. turn off - should - at night - my - I - phone - .

3. a carton - drank - juice - Ali - of - .

4. must - signs - follow - road - We - the - .

5. your - What - favorite - festival - is - ?



# Listening Texts

## Unit (7)

### 1) Listen and circle the correct answer.

The Nile is the longest river in the world. It's about 6,670 kilometers long. The Nile is home for different fish, birds and turtles. One of the largest reptiles, the Nile crocodile, lives in it.

### 2) Listen and circle the correct answer.

I remember my first day of school. I was six years old, and I lived in Aswan. I was very nervous. I liked staying at home with my family. I wanted to play with my toys. I didn't want to go to school.

## Unit (8)

### 1) Listen and circle the correct answer.

I have breakfast with my family every day. I like to have a packet of cookies. My father likes to have a slice of cake. My mother likes to have a piece of cheese. My sister likes to have a bar of chocolate.

### 2) Listen and circle the correct answer.

I went to the cinema last night. I went with my friends. We went in a taxi. We saw a great movie. After the film we went to a good restaurant. We had a wonderful meal there. The prices were good. We had a lot of fun.

## Unit (9)

### 1) Listen and circle the correct answer.

In Egypt we make a lot of movies and many of them are famous. We have authors who won important prizes. And of course we love sports! Anyone who loves karate knows the name of the very famous karate player, Ferial Abdelaziz.

### 2) Listen and circle the correct answer.

We all love to give presents. It's even more fun to open presents. How to play this game: Wrap a small present and cover it in lots and lots...and lots of paper. The players sit in a circle. Play some music. Players give the present to the next person as music plays. When the music stops, the player holding the present takes off one piece of paper. The player who unwraps the present keeps it.

## Unit (10)

### 1) Listen and circle the correct answer.

Many people say that computer games are very bad for children. Children can spend many hours on their computers and tablets. They look at the screen and they don't go outside or do their homework. Good children go outside.

### 2) Listen and circle the correct answer.

Noha researched for her homework on her tablet. She logged into some websites with her password. She looked at photos to help her choose a color for her bedroom. She was happy.

## Unit (11)

### 1) Listen and circle the correct answer.

Cities have many cars. Cars make air pollution. They put chemicals into the air. We can't always see the chemicals, but they are dangerous. Air pollution is very dangerous to us. When we breathe the polluted air, we cough and feel sick.

### 2) Listen and circle the correct answer.

My favorite transportation is a ship. I love traveling on water. I enjoy watching the sea. I hear the sound of water only. I enjoy the fresh air from the sea. I can see many kinds of fish in water. All my family like traveling by ship.

## Exams

### Exam (1)

#### 1) Listen and circle the correct answer.

Last week, we went to Damietta to see Grandma and Grandpa, who live by the sea. We saw lots of fish. Grandpa caught a fish which Grandma made into a lovely dish.

### Exam (2)

#### 1) Listen and circle the correct answer.

The Nile is very important. It brings life to Egypt. The Nile is the longest river in the world. It helps us to grow our food. It has two branches.



**Exam (3)**

**1) Listen and circle the correct answer.**

The month before Eid is called Ramadan. In Ramadan, many Muslims fast during the day. This means they don't eat or drink until sunset. In the month of Ramadan, people think about the past year.

**Exam (4)**

**1) Listen and circle the correct answer.**

Grandpa's village was very quiet. Now, there is a lot of people. There were no cars in the past. Now, there are a lot of trucks and cars. Grandpa was eight years old when he buried the box of memories. Now, Grandpa is very old.

**Exam (5)**

**1) Listen and circle the correct answer.**

Eid Al-Fitr is a Muslim festival. It happens in the first day of Shawwal. In Ramadan, people fast during the day. This means they don't eat or drink until sunset. Many people make kahk to celebrate Eid Al-Fitr. Kahk are delicious cookies. People go to the mosque and spend time with their families.

**Exam (6)**

**1) Listen and circle the correct answer.**

Many people say that computer games are bad for children. Children can spend many hours on their computers and tablets. Parents say this is not healthy for their children. Parents are sad.

**Exam (7)**

**1) Listen and circle the correct answer.**

Two years ago, we had a very special party. My great-grandma was 90 years old. All my family came together to celebrate. We ate salad, meat, fish and fruit. We had chocolate cake also.

**Exam (8)**

**1) Listen and circle the correct answer.**

Grandma says that her mom and dad drove gas cars. They were very noisy. Now we have electric cars that use electricity and gas. They are much cleaner and quieter.

**Exam (9)**

**1) Listen and circle the correct answer.**

Two years ago, we had a very special party. My great-grandma was 90 years old. All my family came together to celebrate. We ate salad, meat, fish and fruit. We had chocolate cake, too.

**Exam (10)**

**1) Listen and circle the correct answer.**

The chameleons are a kind of reptiles. They are interesting. They have amazing eyes. They change their colors. They are the same color as the place where they are. They eat insects and leaves.

**Exam (11)**

**1) Listen and circle the correct answer.**

It's important to be safe online. You should keep your password secret. You shouldn't share your personal information. You shouldn't accept to be friends with people you don't know.

**Exam (12)**

**1) Listen and circle the correct answer.**

Eid Al-Fitr is a Muslim festival. It comes in the first day of the 10<sup>th</sup> Islamic month, called Shawwal. People eat kahk. People say "Eid Mubarak" to their friends.

**Exam (13) خاص بطلاب الأزهر الشريف**

**1) Listen and choose the correct answer.**

I remember my first day of school. I put on a blue T-shirt and black shoes. My dad drove me to school. I was nervous. I didn't want to go. I want to stay at home and play with my toys.